Thank you very much for choosing this vehicle.

In order to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After reading, please leave the manual in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that authorized service station knows your vehicle best and has factory-trained technicians and OEM parts to guarantee your safety. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying will affect the functionality, safety and durability of your vehicle.

According to the specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

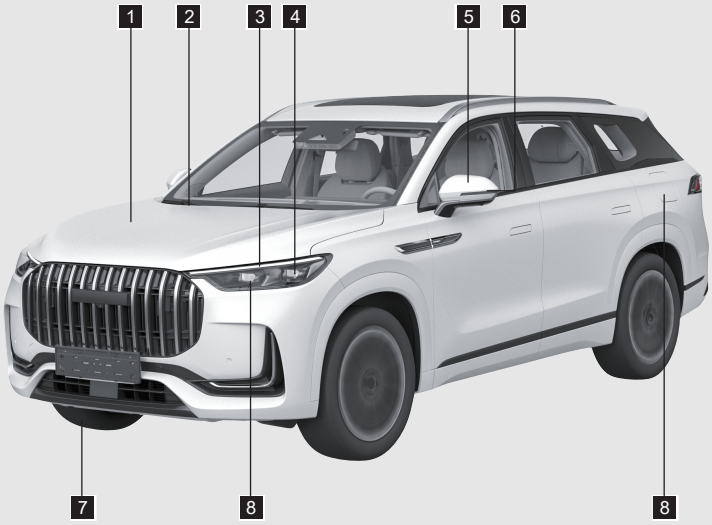
Any data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot be used as the basis for any insurance claim.

We reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission.

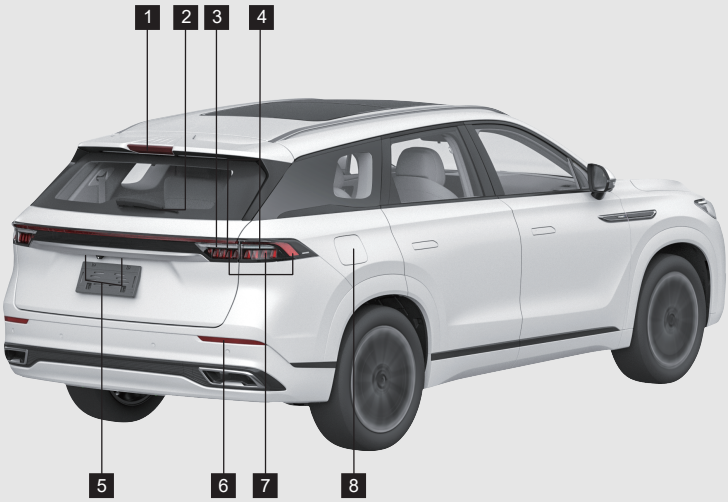
Happy driving!

Version No.: T26PHEVLHDOM25ENEU02
Issued September 2025



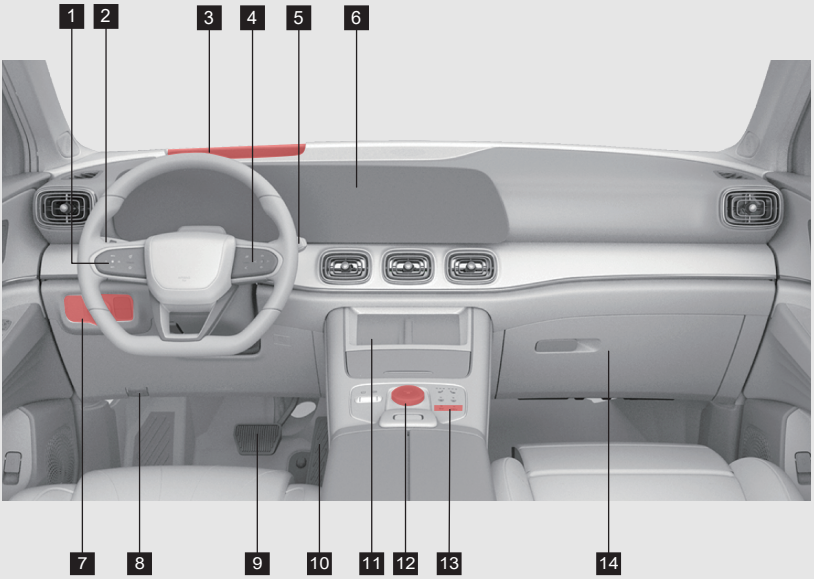
1 Front Compartment Cover P.137
2 Front Wiper Blade P.45
3 Position Light P.46
Turn Signal Light P.47
Daytime Running Light P.48
4 Low Beam Light P.46
5 Outside Rear View Mirror P.39
6 Side Turn Signal Light P.47
7 Tire P.274
8 High Beam Light P.47
9 AC Charging Port Cover P.235
DC Charging Port Cover P.236

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



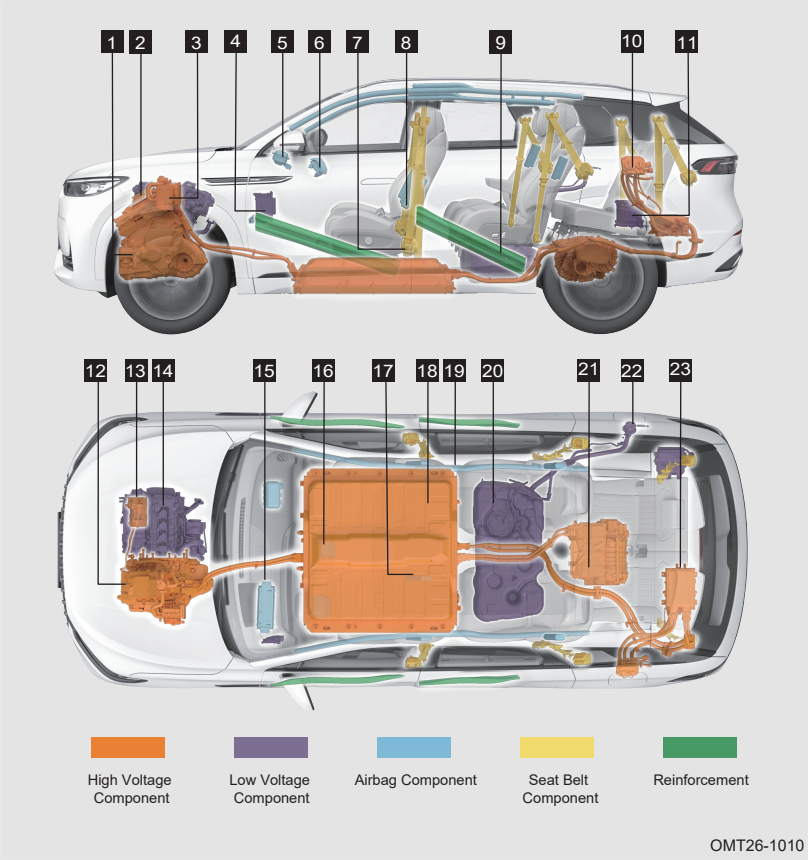
1 High Mounted Brake Light P.48
2 Rear Wiper Blade..... P.45
3 Back-up Light P.48
4 Turn Signal Light..... P.47
5 License Plate Light..... P.46
6 Rear Fog Light..... P.46
7 Position Light..... P.46
Brake Light..... P.48
8 Fuel Tank Cap P.142

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



1 Cruise Button P.177
2 Wiper Switch P.42
3 Headup Display P.193
4 Audio Button P.106
5 Column Shift Switch P.156
6 Dual Display (Instrument Cluster) P.27
Dual Display (Audio System) P.101
7 Headlight Switch P.46
Power Back Door Switch P.138
Fuel Tank Cap Release Switch P.142
8 Front Compartment Cover Release Lever P.137
9 Brake Pedal
10 Accelerator Pedal
11 Wireless Charging Area P.121
12 Driving Mode Knob P.226
13 EV Button P.224
HEV Button P.224
14 Glove Box P.133

Note: The interiors are different depending to the market requirement. Please refer to the actual vehicle.


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
High Voltage Component
Low Voltage Component
Airbag Component
Seat Belt Component
Reinforcement

OMT26-1010

1 Hybrid Transmission
2 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit
3 High Voltage Heater
4 Vehicle Control Unit
5 Front Passenger Airbag
6 Driver Airbag
7 Seat Belt Pretensioner
8 Side Airbag
9 Anti-collision Panel
10 AC/DC Charging Port
11 Battery (12 V)
12 Front Motor Controller
13 Electric Compressor
14 Engine
15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
16 Airbag Module
17 Center Airbag
18 Power Battery
19 Side Curtain
20 High Pressure Fuel Tank
21 Rear Drive Motor
22 Fuel Filler
23 On-board Charger Assembly

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual....2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index.....2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in Manual

Symbols in Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate.....4
Delivery Card.....5

1-4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Card

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card 7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 11
Delivery Inspection Certificate..... 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in..... 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle..... 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check 14
Before Starting Engine 14
After Starting Engine..... 15
When Driving..... 15
Parking Operations..... 15
Parking on Slope..... 16
Exhaust System Inspection 17

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving..... 18

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 19
Driving Through Water 19

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 20
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow..... 21
Tire Chains..... 21

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice..... 23
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview..... 27
Operation/Malfunction Indicator..... 28

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn 37
Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped)..... 37
Adjusting Steering Wheel Manually (If Equipped) 38
Adjusting Steering Wheel Electrically (If Equipped) 38

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror..... 39

Outside Rear View Mirror..... 39
Outside rear view mirror memory function 41
Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing..... 41

2-4. Wiper System

Front wiper operation 42
Rear Wiper Operation 43
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped)..... 44
Replacing Wiper Blade..... 45

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 46
Interior Lighting 48
Headlight Leveling Adjusting..... 50
Follow Me Home Function..... 50
Smart Vehicle Locating Function..... 51
Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) 51
Fogging Instructions for Light..... 52

2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture 53
Head Restraint..... 53
Front Seat 54
Second Row Manual Seat (5-seat)..... 56
Third Row Seat (7-seat) (If Equipped)..... 57
Seat Heating Function..... 58
Seat Ventilation Function..... 59
Seat Memory Function 60
Seat Massage (If Equipped) 61
Easy Seat Access/Exit Function..... 62

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt 63
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)..... 68
Active Pre-tensioner Seat Belt (If Equipped) 68

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System..... 70
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 72
Installing Child Restraint System 74
Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag..... 77
Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat 78

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key 81
Effective Range..... 83
Keyless Entry..... 85
Vehicle Arming..... 87
Immobilizer System 88
Vehicle Locating with Smart Key (If Equipped) 89
Remote Starting for Smart Key 89

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking 90
Door Mechanical Switch 92
Power Child Lock 93

3-3. Windows

Power Windows 93
Second Row Window Sunshade (If Equipped)..... 95
Window Remote Control Function..... 96
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)..... 96

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof 98
Moon Roof Remote Control Function..... 99
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function..... 100

3-5. Audio System

Audio View 101
Shortcut Menu 102
Atmosphere Lamp..... 102
Local Setting..... 103
Vehicle Settings 103
Audio Button..... 106
Voice Recognition Function..... 106
Phone-link..... 107

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Automatic A/C..... 110
A/C Setting..... 112
Air Conditioning Operation..... 112
Air Conditioning Heating Operation..... 117
Air Conditioning Cooling Operation..... 117
Intelligent Mode..... 119
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box 119
Air Outlets Airflow Control..... 120

3-7. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped) 121

3-8. FOTA Upgrade

FOTA Upgrade (If Equipped) 122
Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade..... 124
Operation for Upgrade Now 124
Appointment Upgrade Operation..... 127
Upgrade Result Prompt..... 128
Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading..... 129
Network Security Notification 130

3-9. Remote Control System

Remote Control System (If Equipped)..... 130
Quick access to management 131

3-10. Storage Space

Storage Space..... 133

3-11. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Power Outlet..... 136

3-12. USB Port

Front USB Port 136
Rear USB Port..... 137

3-13. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors..... 137

3-14. Hood

Opening/Closing Hood 137

3-15. Back Door

Power Back Door 138
Back Door Emergency Opening..... 142

3-16. Fuel Tank Cap

Electric Fuel Tank Cap 142

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Before Driving Vehicle

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving 146
Vehicle Power-on 146
Vehicle Power-off 148

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 149

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 150
Auto Hold System (-AUTO HOLD) 152
Foot Brake 154

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission 155
Column Shift Switch..... 156
Shift Paddle (If Equipped) 157

4-5. Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD) 159
Driving Mode 159

4-6. Airbag

Airbag..... 165

5. ASSIST DRIVING

5-1. Intelligent active speed limiting (ISLC)

Intelligent active speed limiting (ISLC)..... 175

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS)..... 176
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)..... 177
Active Speed Limit (ASL)..... 183

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 184
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 184
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)..... 186
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped) 187

5-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped) 189
Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped) 191
Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 191
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped) 192
Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System..... 192

5-5. Driving Safety Assist System

Head Up Display (If Equipped) 193
Leaving Reminder System (DAI) 194
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 195

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/ Front Collision Warning (FCW) System 197

5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System 201
Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) 204

5-7. Parking View Monitor System

Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)..... 204
Parking Radar System 208

5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System(DMS) 211

5-9. Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System 212
ONE BOX braking system..... 213
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System 214
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 215
Extended Function 217

5-10. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

Power Battery..... 218
New Energy Settings 221
Energy Recovery Intensity..... 223
Operating Mode 224
Charging Device 230
Charging Method..... 234
AC Charging Socket Electronic Lock 238
Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 240
Charging Precautions 240
Safety Warning for Charging..... 242
External Discharging Function (If Equipped)..... 243
External Discharging Method 243
Discharging Precautions 246
Safety Warning for Discharging 246
Pedestrian Reminder System 247

5-11. Data Privacy

Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) 248
Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)..... 248
Emergency call (eCall) 249

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Emergency Call Function..... 252
Hazard Light..... 252
Reflective Vest..... 253
Warning Triangle..... 253
Spare Tools 254

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

Flat Tire 254
Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High 258

6-3. Towing

Towing Vehicle 258
Emergency Towing Vehicle..... 259
Installing Towing Eyelet ... 260

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box 261
Checking Fuse..... 263
Replacing Fuse..... 263

6-5. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery..... 264
Jump-starting..... 265

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance..... 268
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 268
Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information 269
Safety Check 269

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance..... 270
Checking Oil Level..... 271
Checking transmission fluid level..... 272
Checking Brake Fluid Level 272
Checking Coolant Level 273
Checking Radiator and Condenser 274
Checking Tires..... 274
Tire Rotation..... 276
Checking Battery..... 276
Checking Air Conditioning Filter 276
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid..... 277
Checking Wiper Blade..... 277

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information..... 279
Maintenance Schedule.... 280
Technical Data 287

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 290
Vehicle Product Label 291
Engine Number..... 291
Rear Drive Motor number 292
Microwave Window..... 292

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 293
Vehicle Type..... 294
Vehicle Weight..... 294
Vehicle Performance..... 295
Engine Performance 296
Fuel System 297
Suspension System..... 298
Wheel Alignment..... 298
Wheel and Tire..... 299
Battery..... 299
Drive Motor 300
Power Battery 301
Light Bulb Specification ... 302
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components..... 303
Your Rights..... 304
Contact Us 304

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual 2

Table of Contents 2

Pictorial Index.....2

Index.....2

1-2. Symbols in Manual

Symbols in Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate 4

Delivery Card 5

1-4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Card

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card 7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 11

Delivery Inspection Certificate 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in..... 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check..... 14

Before Starting Engine..... 14

After Starting Engine..... 15

When Driving..... 15

Parking Operations..... 15

Parking on Slope..... 16

Exhaust System Inspection 17

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving 18

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 19

Driving Through Water 19

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 20

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21

Tire Chains..... 21

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice 23

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three ways for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each one.

Table of Contents

The main Table of Contents will tell you which chapter of the Owner's Manual contains the information you need and what page to find it on.

Pictorial Index

The Pictorial Index is a helpful tool to find the required information quickly, especially if you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies. More details about the index.

1-2. Symbols in Manual

Symbols in Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to particularly important information. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

WARNING
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle, personal injury or even death.

CAUTION
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Indicates that waste must be handled or disposed of according to local environmental regulations to avoid any contamination.

READ
Indicates that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully in order to both enjoy your driving experience and to keep your vehicle in optimum condition.

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

Prior to your purchase, authorized service station has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations. The dealership will record the delivery date and affix its official seal to the User Registration Certificate. Before you sign the User Registration Certificate, the authorized dealer will provide you with instructions regarding your vehicle's overall performance and some basic knowledge about its features and regular operation according to the Vehicle Delivery Card.

User Registration Certificate

Model Code	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Seal of Dealer:	
Signature of Dealer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer:	

Delivery Card

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Vehicle Performan-ce	1	Engine	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Engine oil, brake fluid, power steering fluid (if equipped), coolant, windshield washer fluid	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	VIN code, engine number and nameplate etc.	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Whole set of vehicle keys	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	All lights of vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Windshield and painted surfaces	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Speedometer, tachometer and instrument cluster LCD display	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Tires, spare tires, spare tools and Owner's Manual	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Seats, seat belts, A/C switches and outlets, glove box and sun visors	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Windows, rear view mirrors, windshield wipers, windshield washers, battery, reversing radar system, horns, moon roof (if equipped), audio device and antenna	YES ☐	NO ☐

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
	1*	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		E5/E10	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Normal operation during the break-in period	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	Operation of all the vehicle lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Understanding warning lights and indicator lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	Correct time/mileage of the maintenance schedule	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Thorough understanding of the cooling system and normal usage of the coolant	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Correct operation of air conditioning	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Precautions during starting the vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Correct operation of audio system	YES ☐	NO ☐
	11	Correct usage of moon roof (if equipped)	YES ☐	NO ☐
Signature of Sales Clerk: Date: Signature of User: Date:				

*: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

1-4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Card

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card

Authorized service station will provide a dedicated service consultant when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the consultant.

Sheet one (for user)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
☐	Have explained to the user the importance of having regular maintenance or vehicle repairs done at authorized service station.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
☐	Have informed the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have any questions or concerns, ask your service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person to Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can request another service consultant.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	

☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminders.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance booking.
☐	Annual inspection reminders.
☐	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
☐	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

Sheet two (for sales & servicing department)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
☐	Have explained to the user the importance of having regular maintenance or vehicle repairs done at authorized service station.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
☐	Have informed the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have any questions or concerns, ask your service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person to Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can request another service consultant.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminders.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance booking.
☐	Annual inspection reminders.

☐	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
☐	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

Before delivering the vehicle to you, the Sales & Servicing department of your dealership has inspected it according to regulations. The Sales & Servicing department of Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer unit.

The dealership will familiarize you with your vehicle and verify it via the "-Delivery Card" which will be signed by both parties.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

In witness whereof, this vehicle has passed delivery inspection as regulated, and quality meets technical specification.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Sales & Servicing Department:	
Signature of Sales & Servicing Department:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Sales & Servicing Department:	

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Frictional resistance between the moving parts of a new vehicle is much more likely in the initial use of the vehicle than later on. Therefore, the initial use can have a greater impact on the vehicle's lifespan, operational reliability and economy. We advise that the use of a new vehicle must strictly follow the following guidelines and that the break-in period would be on average the first 3,000 km driven.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 1,000 km:

- Avoid driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not exceed 100 km/h;
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 1,000 - 1,500 km:

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, so it will be necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. Do not run the engine at maximum speed in neutral or other gears if the engine is cold.

■ Tire and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tires, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tires also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 100 km of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also needs break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 200 km. If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increase depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to each replacement of braking lining later.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Insufficient tire inflation pressure will lead to tire wear and fuel wastage.
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy increase the engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for a long time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold weather will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starting.
5. Avoid engine idling for a long time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for a long time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid out-of-gear or overspeed of engine. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Obey the traffic light's instructions while driving and minimize the number of stops, or take full advantage of road without traffic lights to drive vehicle. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking, this will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
10. Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for a long time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.
11. Keep a proper vehicle speed on the motorway. The faster the vehicle's speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.
12. Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tire wear, but also increase engine load.
13. Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.
14. Maintain vehicle in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without proper adjustment, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance will extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs. Your vehicle needs to be serviced more frequently if you regularly drive in severe conditions.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tires (including spare tire): Check tire pressure with a tire pressure gauge and carefully check tires for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tire.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be fastened securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Make especially sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper.

3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs.
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper.

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure each indication of gauges and meters is working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle is not pulled to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safe driving. Vehicle should be parked in a place with wide road, good view and no impact on traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

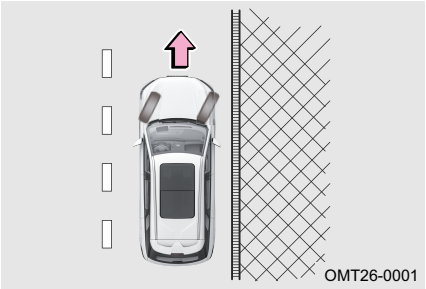
1. Depress clutch (vehicle with manual transmission) and brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. For vehicle with automatic transmission: Move shift lever to "P" position. For vehicle with manual transmission: Move shift lever to neutral position.
4. Turn vehicle power to OFF mode.

⚠ CAUTION
When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the keys with you.

Parking on Slope

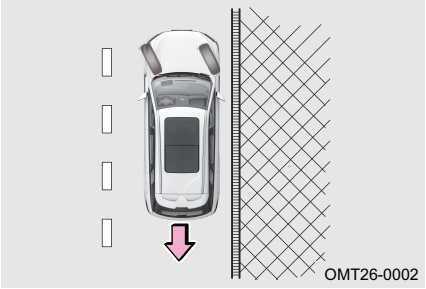
Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly enabled by the force of the parking brake. Failing to apply park brake or any brake malfunction may cause the vehicle to slide down a slope and personal injury or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face the tires towards one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

■ Parking on downhill with curb



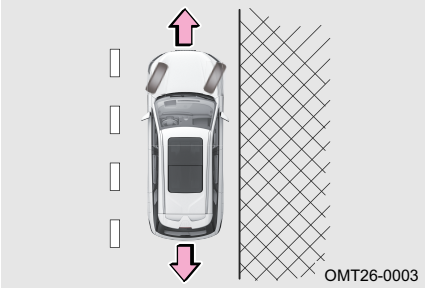
If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the right to ensure that the front part of the front right wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding forward down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the left to ensure that the rear part of the front right wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding back down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel hard right to prevent the vehicle driving into the center of the road or sliding down the slope. Turn the steering wheel to the side of the road, so the vehicle is facing away from the center of the road when moving, then apply the parking brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to be seriously injured during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the road outside your house.
- Park the vehicle in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If a change in exhaust gas sound is heard, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area, unless moving the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.
- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for a long time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in a spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

Exhaust System Inspection

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a changed noise coming from the exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When the vehicle is lifted for inspection and repair.

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off road.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on roads covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, rivers, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. These activities may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personal injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

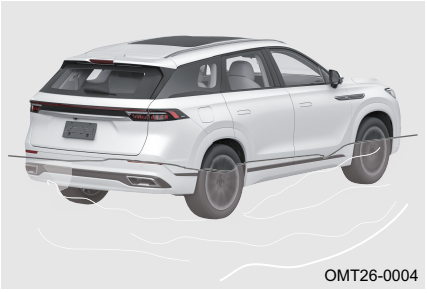
Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and roads will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on a motorway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tires and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Driving Through Water


OMT26-0004

The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded after heavy rain. If driving through water is unavoidable, check the depth of the water and drive slowly and carefully.

1. When you are driving through water, make sure that the engine runs properly and that the steering and braking systems work normally. When driving smoothly through water, you should switch to low gear and avoid a sudden depression of the accelerator pedal in order to prevent water from splashing into the engine.
2. Depress and hold accelerator pedal while driving, make sure vehicle has adequate and stable power. You should drive through without half-way stopping, gear shifting or sharp turning.
3. If vehicle stalls in water, never restart it immediately to prevent further damage to engine. The vehicle should be towed to a safe place where the water is shallow to find out the cause.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that have accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal for several times to dry the brakes off.

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips

- Coolant: Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use recommended coolant. More details about coolant type selection.
- Battery and cables: Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- Oil: In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used. More details about oil type selection.
- Door locks: Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- Washer fluid: Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at authorized service station and most vehicle component distributors.
- Mudguards: Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you depending on different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: Tire chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cables, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use engine coolant or other alternative washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow



Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tire and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. To reduce the torque and avoid slipping, you can use 2nd gear (vehicle with manual transmission) when starting off vehicle on ice or snow covered road surfaces. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving on silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and drive forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, as this may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tire Chains

Purchase a set of tire chains that match size of the vehicle tires. Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tire chains in a safe location;
3. Install tire chains by following the instructions provided;
4. Chains can only be installed on drive wheels;
5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tires, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged. Vehicle damages resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;

6. Please consult authorized service station for details about wheels, tire size.

⚠ CAUTION
Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury. • Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tire chains; • Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will affect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries; • Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, park the vehicle in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary; • Do not drive vehicle at more than 30 km/h when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate or decelerate suddenly etc.

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice

The company has provided cybersecurity support services in the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and regularly or irregularly updates or terminates this service.

The scrapped vehicle will stop providing Network Security Services; Network Security Services will maintain essential service after the vehicle is discontinued for 10 years.

We can notify customers through website announcements, emails, in-vehicle systems, mobile phone text messages, voice calls, etc. according to the specific content of the notification.

Email, SMS, and voice calls will be sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in the customer's account registration information.

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale

Before you resell or scrap the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

The company does not assume any responsibility if the personal information of the vehicle terminal is leaked to a third party due to improper operation.

Our franchised dealers are familiar with the relevant regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview 27

Operation/Malfunction Indicator 28

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn 37

Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped) 37

Adjusting Steering Wheel Manually (If Equipped) 38

Adjusting Steering Wheel Electrically (If Equipped) 38

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror 39

Outside Rear View Mirror 39

Outside rear view mirror memory function 41

Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing 41

2-4. Wiper System

Front wiper operation 42

Rear Wiper Operation 43

Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped) 44

Replacing Wiper Blade 45

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 46

Interior Lighting 48

Headlight Leveling Adjusting 50

Follow Me Home Function 50

Smart Vehicle Locating Function 51

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) 51

Fogging Instructions for Light 52

2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture 53

Head Restraint 53

Front Seat 54

Second Row Manual Seat (5-seat) 56

Third Row Seat (7-seat) (If Equipped) 57

Seat Heating Function 58

Seat Ventilation Function 59

Seat Memory Function 60

Seat Massage (If Equipped) 61

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function 62

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt 63

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 68

Active Pre-tensioner Seat Belt (If Equipped) 68

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System 70

TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 72

Installing Child Restraint System 74

Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag 77

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat 78

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview



1 Instantaneous power consumption: The ratio of the current output electric drive power to the maximum electric drive power (unit: %).

2 Vehicle speed display: Current driving speed (unit: km/h).

3 Gear position information: The currently selected gear position information.

4 Driving information: Current driving information.

Shortly press "▭" button on steering wheel to circularly switch among power - last 50 km - after self-clearing- navigation - tire pressure display in driving information screen.

Since reset: Long press "○" button on steering wheel to reset the average speed, trip mileage.

Navigation: Long press "○" button on steering wheel to enter full-screen map.

5 Fuel level display: Current remaining fuel in fuel tank and driving mileage.

6 Power display: The current remaining SOC of power battery.

7 Mileage display: Driving mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km).

READ

- Battery level display can be set to Battery Level/Standard Mileage/ Dynamic Mileage through Audio System - Energy Center Setting Screen - More - Pure Electric Mileage Display.
- Mileage display can be set to Total Distance/HEV Distance/EV Distance through Audio System - Energy Center Setting Screen - More - Driving Distance Display.
- When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.
- Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used, otherwise it will not indicate the correct speed.

Operation/Malfunction Indicator

With vehicle powered on, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating that system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the vehicle, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

The operation indicator remains on, used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle's system.

Malfunction indicator remains on or flashes, used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning.

Name	Type	Indicator	Description
Daytime running light indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that daytime running light is turned on.
Position light indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that position light is turned on.
Turn signal indicator	Operation indicator		When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the turn signal light on corresponding side flashes. When hazard light is turned on, both left and right turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.
High beam light indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that high beam light is turned on.

Rear fog light indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that rear fog light s turned on.
Driving ready indicator	Operation indicator	READY	The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is in READY state and vehicle can start off.
Intelligent high beam assist indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that intelligent high beam assist is in operating condition.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that intelligent high beam assist is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Front seat belt indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that front seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Second row seat belt indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the second row seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Electric parking brake system indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric parking brake system is in operating condition currently. The indicator flashes during sudden braking, it is normal and no need to deal with. If it flashes in other cases, it indicates that the system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric parking brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Auto hold system indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that auto hold system is turned on.
			The indicator remains on to indicate that auto hold system is activated.

Electronic stability program system indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator flashes to indicate that electronic stability program system is in operating condition.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electronic stability program system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Electronic stability program system OFF indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electronic stability program system is turned off.
Hill descent control system indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that hill descent control system is in operating condition.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that hill descent control system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Anti-lock brake system indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that anti-lock brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Brake system indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that brake fluid level is low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Blind spot detection system indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that blind spot detection system enters level 1 alarm state.
			The indicator flashes to indicate that blind spot detection system enters level 2 alarm state.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that blind spot detection system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Active speed limit indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that active speed limit enters pre-speed limit state.
			The indicator remains on to indicate that active speed limit enters speed limit state.
Adaptive cruise control system indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system enters the pre-cruising state.
			The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system enters cruising state.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane departure warning indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure warning is in ON/limit condition.
			The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure warning is in standby condition currently. The indicator flashes to indicate that lane departure warning is activated.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure warning is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane departure prevention indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure prevention is in ON/limit condition currently.
			The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure prevention is in standby condition currently. The indicator flashes to indicate that lane departure prevention is activated.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure prevention is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Emergency lane keeping indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that emergency lane keeping is in ON/limit condition currently.
			The indicator remains on to indicate that emergency lane keeping is in standby condition currently.
			The indicator flashes to indicate that emergency lane keeping is activated.
	Malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that the emergency lane keeping is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Automatic emergency braking system indicator	Operation indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that automatic emergency braking system is in operating condition currently.
	Malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that the automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Traffic jam assist system/ integrated cruise assist system indicator	Operation indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is pre-activated.
			This indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is activated.
	Malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Gasoline particulate filter indicator	Operation indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that gasoline particulate filter is full, please increase the speed and clean it.zheyi
	Malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that gasoline particulate filter is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Electric power steering system indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric power steering system is not initialized or calibrated. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
			The indicator remains on to indicate that electric power steering system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Charging and discharging indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the operating condition of charging and discharging system. If this indicator does not remain on when the vehicle is powered on, or it remains on after vehicle starting, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Power battery indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that power battery is low. Please charge as soon as possible.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that power battery is seriously discharged. Please charge as soon as possible.
High voltage insulation indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the insulating property of high voltage system decreases. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the insulating property of high voltage system seriously decreases. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Electric mode indicator	Operation indicator	EV	The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle enters EV mode.
		EV+	The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle enters EV+ mode.
HEV mode indicator	Operation indicator	HEV	The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle enters HEV mode.

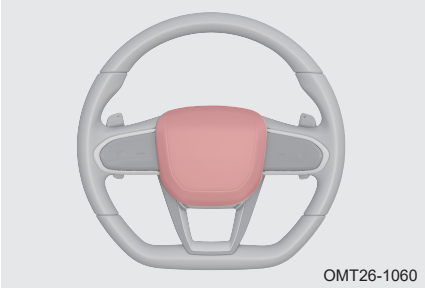
Charging gun connection indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that charging connection device is connected.
Discharging gun connection indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that discharging connection device is connected.
Power limit indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that power battery is low or the power decreases due to system overheating. Slow down and drive vehicle to a safe area and stop for charging and cooling down. If the indicator is still on, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Power battery system indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that power battery system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Vehicle high voltage system indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that power battery, electric drive and charging system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Transmission indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
			The indicator remains on to indicate that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Airbag indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Tire pressure monitoring system indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that tire pressure is incorrect. Please check if tire pressure is too low or if temperature is too high. If tire pressure is normal, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
High coolant temperature warning indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop, power off the vehicle after idling for several minutes. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
EPC malfunction indicator	Malfunction indicator	EPC	The indicator remains on to indicate that engine system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
MIL malfunction indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the part connected to OBD and related to emission or OBD system itself is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Maintenance indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the vehicle needs maintenance. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Warning indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is malfunctioning or has abnormal information. You can inquiry the relevant alarm information in the fault inquiry screen. If it cannot be solved, please contact the authorized service station immediately.
Fatigue driving indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate to take a rest when driving time exceeds the set time.

Overspeed alarm indicator	Operation indicator		The indicator comes on to indicate to pay attention to the vehicle speed when vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit.
Low engine oil pressure warning indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine oil pressure is low. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Low fuel level warning indicator	Malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is running out of fuel. Please add fuel as soon as possible.
Steering wheel handsoff warning (- type A)	Malfunction indicator		When the driver releases the steering wheel during driving, a steering wheel hands-off warning will appear on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an alarm sound, reminding the driver to hold the steering wheel.
Steering wheel handsoff warning (- type B)	Malfunction indicator		When the driver releases the steering wheel during driving, a steering wheel hands-off warning will appear on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an alarm sound, reminding the driver to hold the steering wheel.
Door open reminder indicator	Malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver of the opening and closing status of driver door. When vehicle speed is ⩽ 3 km/h with a door open, there is no alarm sound, and the corresponding door open indicator remains on in red; When the vehicle speed is ⩾ 3 km/h, the corresponding door open indicator flashes, and the door opening sound alarm is triggered at the same time.

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn


OMT26-1060

To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

READ

Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped)



OMT26-1061

After vehicle is started, press "" on the air conditioning system screen to turn on steering wheel heating function. After pressing the button again, steering wheel heating function is turned off.

CAUTION

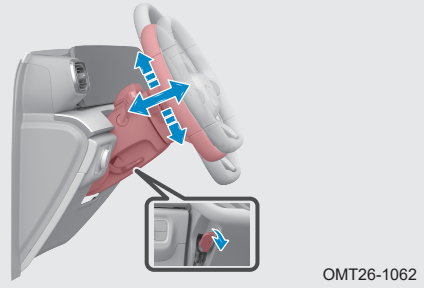
When the following conditions are met, the steering wheel heating function will be turned on:

- Engine is operating.
- Voltage of battery is in normal range.
- Steering heated switch is pressed.

When any of the following conditions are met, the function will stop or pause after it works for a period of time:

- Engine stops.
- Steering heated switch is pressed again.

Adjusting Steering Wheel Manually (If Equipped)


OMT26-1062

Stop vehicle at a safe place away from major traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode:

Step 1: Push down adjustment lever and release it;

Step 2: Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;

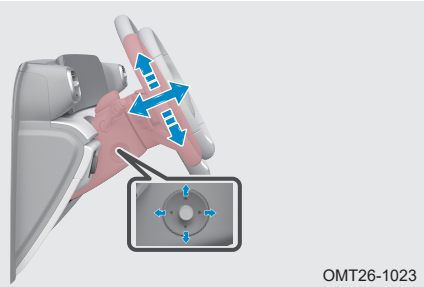
Step 3: Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;

Step 4: Check if the steering wheel is shaking. Repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure the steering wheel is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

Adjusting Steering Wheel Electrically (If Equipped)


OMT26-1023

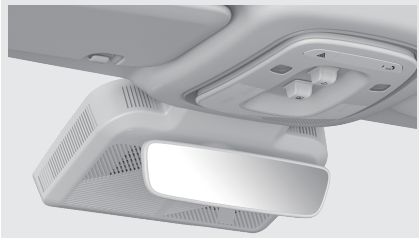
Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, press the power adjustment steering wheel switch, adjust the steering wheel up and down/forward and backward to adjust it to a proper position.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, doing so may cause driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- For safety, after adjusting steering wheel, try moving steering wheel up and down/forward and backward to make sure that it is securely locked. Otherwise, steering wheel may move suddenly during driving, causing unnecessary injury and loss.

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror



OMT26-1070

When driving at night, the light sensor installed in front/rear of the inside rear view mirror automatically detects the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically adjusts the lens angle to reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

Outside Rear View Mirror

Outside rear view mirror adjustment

■ Switch adjustment



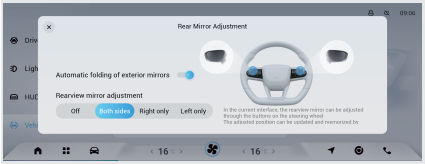
OMT26-1072

With vehicle in READY state, press "/" button (indicator comes on) to adjust the left/right outside rear view mirror lens position within tens of seconds.

▲ Adjust upward; ▼ Adjust downward.

◀ Adjust to the left; ▶Adjust to the right.

■ Audio adjustment



OMT26-1073

With vehicle in READY state, rear view mirror can be adjusted by steering wheel button on current page through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Comfort - Rear View Mirror Adjustment.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust outside rear view mirror while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.

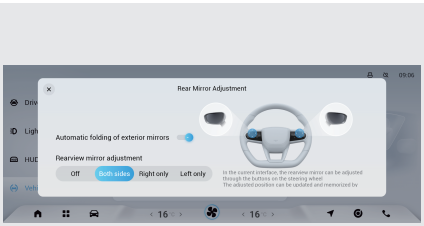
Power folding/extending of outside rear view mirror

■ Switch adjustment


OMT26-1074

With vehicle powered on, press "" button, outside rear view mirror will fold/extend automatically.

■ Audio adjustment



OMT26-1075

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Automatic folding of exterior mirrors through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Comfort - Rear Mirror Adjustment. In disarming/arming, outside rear view mirror will fold/extend automatically.

READ

According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right outside rear view mirrors are different. Therefore, when power outside rear view mirrors automatically fold, the left and right outside rear view mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not fold/extend the power outside rear view mirror manually, otherwise it may cause the folding function to fail.
- When folding/extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off the outside rear view mirror automatic folding function. This will prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain.

Outside rear view mirror memory function

With vehicle in READY state, restore/save and update the memorized outside rear view mirror location through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Comfort - Rear Mirror Adjustment according to your needs.

READ

Outside rear view mirror memory and seat memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing



OMT26-1077

With vehicle in READY state, set rear view mirror automatic adjustment in reversing to off/both sides/left only/ right only through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Comfort.

When vehicle is reversing (shift to R), outside rear view mirror will flip down automatically, so that you can see the curb below; If your visual field cannot be satisfied, you can adjust position of outside rear view mirror lens. When shifting out of R position, the position will be saved automatically (outside rear view mirror automatic flipping down position).

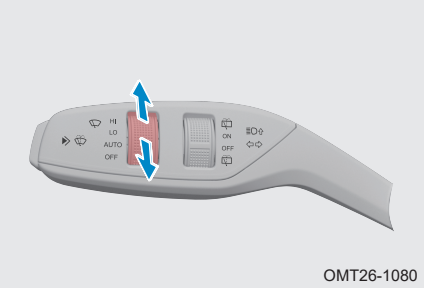
■ Return to position before flipping down under following conditions:

7. When shifting out of R position.
8. Vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h.
9. Switch vehicle to power-off state.

2-4. Wiper System

Front wiper operation

Wiper switch



OMT26-1080

Vehicle is in READY state:

High speed mode: Push roller to "HI" position to operate quickly and continuously.

Low speed mode: Push roller to "LO" position to operate slowly and continuously.

OFF: Push roller to "OFF" position, wipers will operate automatically at low speed until wipers return to stop position.

Auto sensing mode: Push roller to "-AUTO" position, automatically control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall outside.



OMT26-1081

Spray mode: Shortly press the left button of wiper switch, the wiper will stop after wiping once; Long press the left button of wiper switch, the front washer sprays water, and front wiper operates simultaneously. Front washer will stop operating when the switch is released, the wiper will wipe 3 cycles at low speed, and operate one cycle then stop after a few seconds.

Automatic sensing sensitivity



OMT26-1083

With vehicle in READY state, set Wiper sensitivity to low/standard/high/maximum through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.

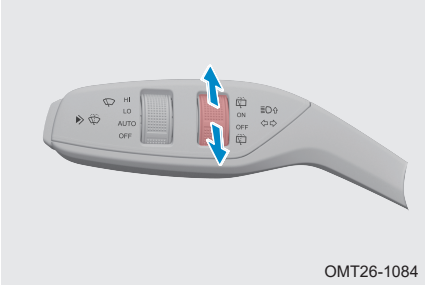
READ

When front wiper is operating, shift to R, the rear wiper will work automatically.

CAUTION

- Take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze during adding washer fluid.
- When operating wiper switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not operate wiper switch to spray water when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- Do not operate wiper switch when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade and scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wiper switch if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- Do not mix water with the washer fluid. Otherwise, it may cause the washer fluid to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before operating wiper switch. If so, defrost it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

Rear Wiper Operation



OMT26-1084

Vehicle is in READY state:

Push roller to "ON" position, rear wiper operates; Push roller to "OFF" position, rear wiper is turned off.

Push roller to " " position from "ON"/"OFF" position and hold, rear washer sprays and rear wiper operates simultaneously.

⚠ CAUTION

- Take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze during adding washer fluid.
- When operating wiper switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not operate wiper switch to spray water when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- Do not operate wiper switch when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade and scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wiper switch if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- Do not mix water with the washer fluid. Otherwise, it may cause the washer fluid to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before operating wiper switch. If so, defrost it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped)

The front nozzle heating function will be turned on when following conditions are met:

- Battery voltage is within the normal range.
- Outside temperature is below 2°C for 5 seconds or more.
- After the drive motor starts.

After the function is turned on, front wiper nozzle heating function turns off when any of the following conditions are met:

- After the drive motor stops.
- It is turned off automatically after the function works approximately 20 minutes.
- When outside temperature is higher than 4°C for 5 seconds or more, front wiper nozzle heating function turns off.

The function interrupts during the wiper nozzle heating:

- When the drive motor starts, front wiper nozzle heating function temporarily pauses until, and after the drive motor starts, the heating function will recover automatically.
- Battery voltage is not within the normal range, front wiper nozzle heating function interrupts.

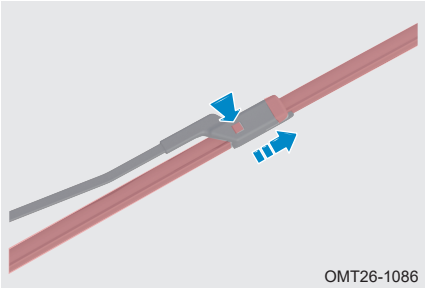
Replacing Wiper Blade

Replacing front wiper blade



OMT26-1085

Step 1: Click " OFF " button on quick menu screen, switch vehicle to power-off state within several seconds, short press the left button on wiper switch to enter maintenance mode;


OMT26-1086

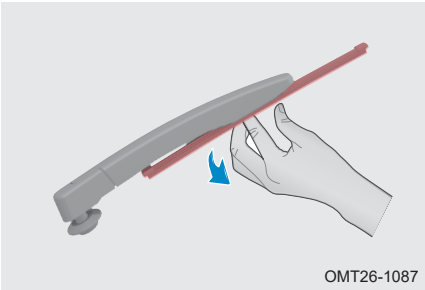
Step 2: Lift the front wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: Pull up wiper blades while pressing the lock button, so as to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure that the fixing clamp is locked firmly;

Step 5: Check that front wipers operate properly.

Replacing rear wiper blade


OMT26-1087

Step 1: Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;

Step 2: Separate the wiper blade by hand as shown in the illustration;

Step 3: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and be sure to install them in place;

Step 4: Check that rear wipers operate properly.

READ

It is recommended that you have wiper blades replaced by someone at authorized service station to ensure correct fitting.

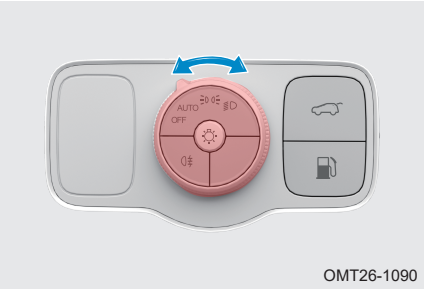
CAUTION

Make sure that the wiper arm returns to its original position before driving. Otherwise it may damage the vehicle and cause an accident.

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting

Headlight switch



OMT26-1090

Vehicle is in READY state:

Auto sensing mode: When headlight is turned off, the switch returns to "-AUTO" position automatically and auto sensing mode is turned on by rotating to "OFF" position. Sense the intensity of external light, turn position lights, low beam lights, license plate light on/off automatically.

OFF: When headlight is turned on, headlight function is turned off and the switch returns to "AUTO" position automatically by rotating to "OFF" position.

Position lights: Rotate to " " position to turn on position lights, license plate lights, ambient light and backlights.

Low beam lights: Rotate to " " position to turn on low beam lights and keep position lights coming on.

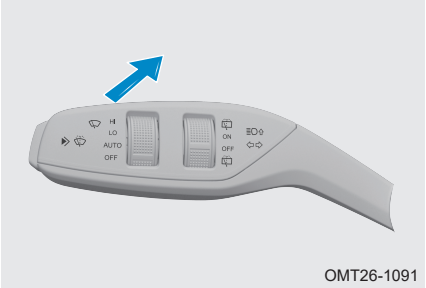
Rear fog lights: When low beam light is turned on, press " " button to turn on rear fog lights.

READ

- When turning off low beam lights, rear fog lights is turned off at the same time.
- When parking vehicle for a long time or before leaving vehicle, make sure that headlight switch is turned off to prevent the battery (12 V) from being depleted. Failure to do so may cause that the vehicle cannot be started.

High beam light

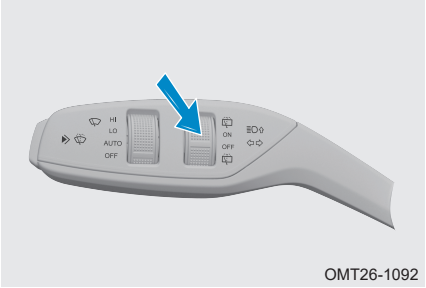
■ High beam lights ON/OFF



OMT26-1091

With vehicle in READY state, when turning on low beam lights, pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, high beam lights come on; Pull towards steering wheel side and release to turn off high beam lights.

■ High beam lights flash



OMT26-1092

With vehicle in READY state, pull wiper switch towards the steering wheel side and release it to flash the high beam lights once. At the same time, high beam indicator in instrument cluster flashes once.

READ
High beam lights can flash when the low beam lights are off.

Turn signal light



OMT26-1093

With vehicle in READY state, dial wiper switch upward, right turn signal light is turned on; Dial it downward, left turn signal light is turned on.

When turn signal lights are turned on, the indicator will flash in the instrument cluster. As vehicle is turning back after turning, combination switch automatically returns to center position.

Note: During a slight steering wheel turn, wiper switch may not automatically return to original position.

■ Lane change assist function

With vehicle in READY state, pull turn signal light switch once but not too far over. This will make the turn signal light flash 3 times.

Daytime running light

After vehicle starts, the daytime running lights come on.

Brake light

Depress the brake pedal, brake light and high mounted stop light turn on.

Back-up light

With vehicle in READY state, shift to R, back-up light turns on.

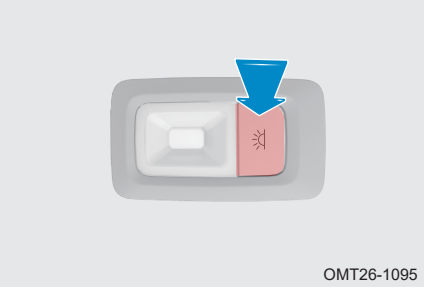
Interior Lighting

Front dome light


OMT26-1094

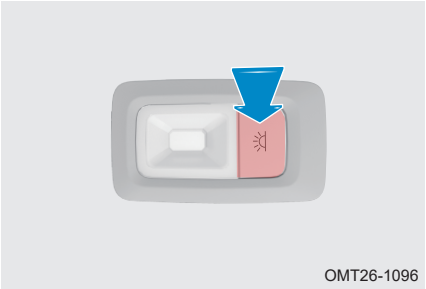
Touch the front left/right dome light, the front dome light on corresponding side comes on.

Second row dome light


OMT26-1095

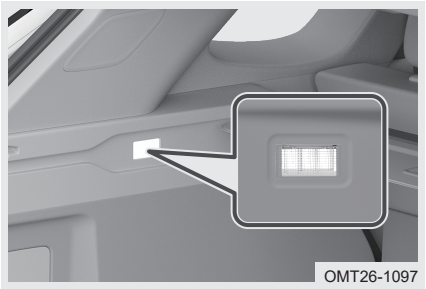
Press "" switch, the second row dome light comes on/goes off.

Third row dome light (if equipped)


OMT26-1096

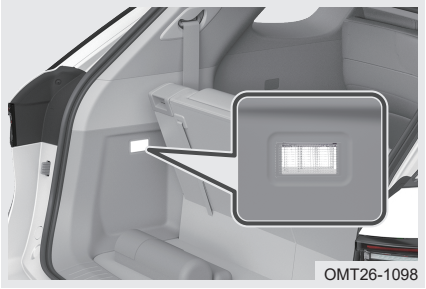
Press "" switch, the third row dome light comes on/goes off.

Luggage compartment light (5-seat)


OMT26-1097

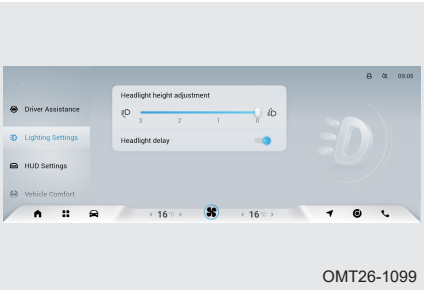
When back door is opened, luggage compartment light will come on automatically. When back door is closed, luggage compartment light will go off immediately.

Luggage compartment light (7-seat)


OMT26-1098

When back door is opened, luggage compartment light will come on automatically. When back door is closed, luggage compartment light will go off immediately.

Headlight Leveling Adjusting



OMT26-1099

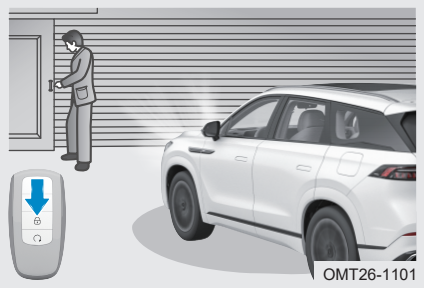
With vehicle in READY state, slide to adjust headlight leveling through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Light Setting.

Follow Me Home Function



OMT26-1100

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Headlight delay through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Light Setting.

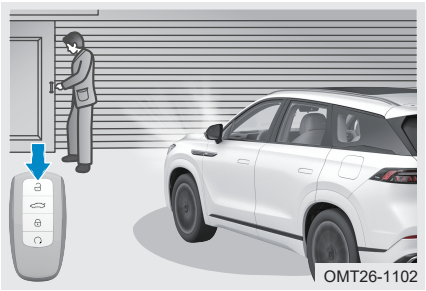


OMT26-1101

ON: Rotate the headlight switch to "-AUTO" position. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, the vehicle is armed successfully. Low beam lights automatically come on for tens of seconds. Press lock button on smart key to activate it again.

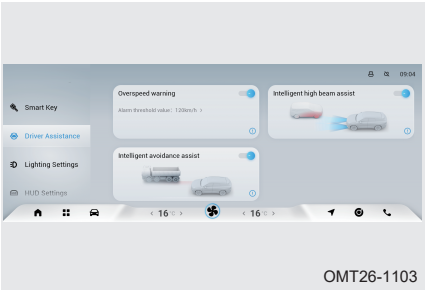
OFF: When the headlight switch is not in "AUTO" position or reaches the set operating time, the follow me home function will turn off automatically. Low beam lights and position lights will go off immediately.

Smart Vehicle Locating Function


OMT26-1102

ON: With vehicle powered off, turn the headlight switch to "AUTO" position before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, the low beam lights will come on for tens of seconds.

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC)



OMT26-1103

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Intelligent high beam assist through Driver Assistance in vehicle setting of audio system.

With vehicle in READY state, rotate headlight switch to "AUTO" position. When the low beam lights automatically come on, push wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, "" white indicator on instrument cluster remains on, and intelligent high beam assist is activated; When intelligent high beam assist is activated and vehicle speed is higher than 40 km/h, intelligent high beam assist automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

When the intelligent high beam assist is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator "" on instrument cluster goes off. Pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, intelligent high beam assist is reactivated.

READ

- When the ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent high beam assist turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, intelligent high beam assist turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right turn signal light is activated, intelligent high beam assist can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.

Fogging Instructions for Light

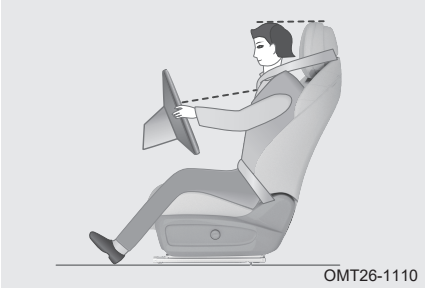
When the weather is cold or humid, the inner side of lights will fog up due to the difference in temperature between the inside and outside. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate fog, which gradually begins to disappear in the inner surface of lens for headlight within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the fog disappears naturally. This is normal.

WARNING

- Following guidelines for driving through water (for example: water depth, speed, etc.) to avoid any water entering the lights.
- After opening light dust cover, reinstall it in place at the end of operation, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to water and dust entering lights!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a high pressure water gun, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water gun, accessories on lights may lose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

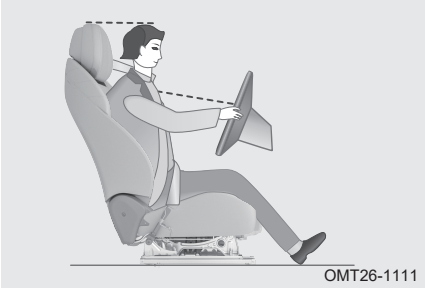
2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture


OMT26-1110

When sitting, sit slightly inclined backwards (25° backward is ideal) and well back on seatback.

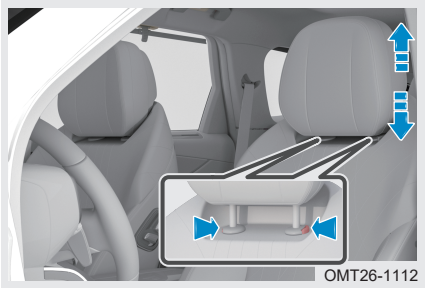
The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms during driving. His/her feet should also be bent slightly so that he/she can fully depress the pedal. Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.


OMT26-1111

The shoulder belt should be over the center of the shoulder and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should lie over the hips but not stomach.

Head Restraint

Adjusting head restraint


OMT26-1112

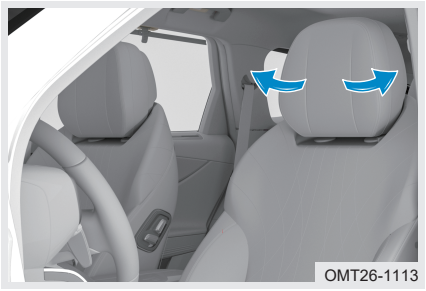
Adjust upward: Pull it up directly to a proper height.

Adjust downward: Press the outside unlock button on head restraint, then adjust the head restraint downward.

Remove head restraints: Press and hold 2 unlock buttons at the same time until head restraint is pulled out completely.

Install head restraints: Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to lock position.

Aviation headrest (If Equipped)


OMT26-1113

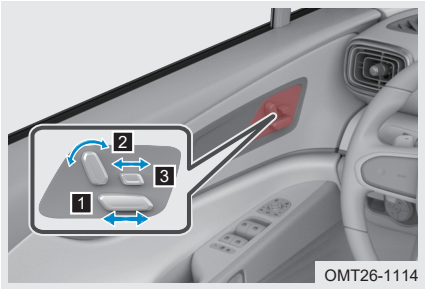
You can adjust angle of both wings of headrest for the aviation headrest, and the deployment status is the same as that of ordinary headrest; The aviation headrest improves the comfort of headrest lateral support, effectively relieving the discomfort caused by turbulence, impact and long distance driving during driving.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust head restraint while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure that the head restraint is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

Front Seat

Driver seat adjustment (if equipped)



OMT26-1114

1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

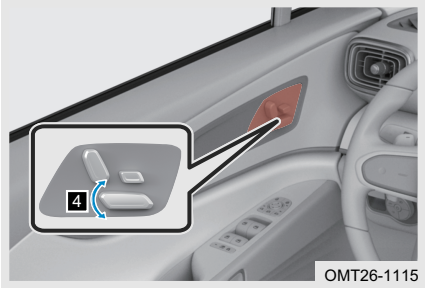
Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

2 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

3 Adjusting leg support angle (If Equipped)

Push the button forward and backward to adjust leg support angle.

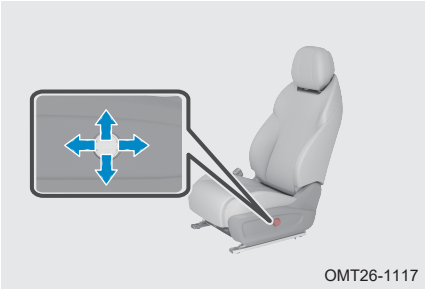


OMT26-1115

4 Adjusting seat height (If Equipped)

Move rear end of button up and down to adjust seat height.

Adjusting driver waist



Long press "↑" to support upper part of waist and reduce support to lower part of waist.

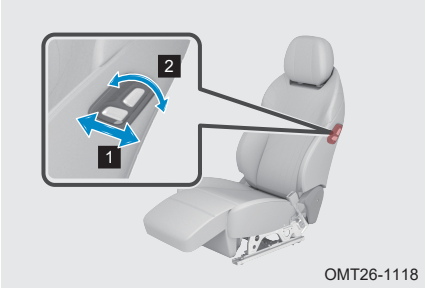
Long press "↓" to support lower part of waist and reduce support to upper part of waist.

Long press "←" to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press "→" to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

Driver seat adjustment travel: The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 240 mm (it can be adjusted 180 mm forward, 60 mm backward); Seatback angle can be adjusted 30 degrees forward, 50 degrees backward; Height can be adjusted 40 mm upward, 20 mm downward.

Front passenger captain button



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

2 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

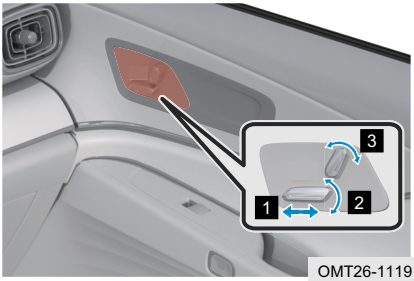
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not place any items under the seat while adjusting the seat, otherwise, it will damage the seat.
- There is a limit position for lumbar support adjustment. When reaching the limit position, release the adjusting button in time. Otherwise, it will damage the seat.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger sit inclined slightly backwards and well back in their seats.

Adjusting front passenger seat



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push button forward and backward to adjust seat forward and backward.

2 Adjusting seat height

Move rear end of button upward and downward to adjust seat upward and downward.

3 Adjusting seatback angle

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

Front passenger seat adjustment travel : The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 240 mm (it can be adjusted 180 mm forward, 60 mm backward); Seatback angle can be adjusted 30 degrees forward, 50 degrees backward.

Front passenger seat adjustment travel : The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 260 mm (it can be adjusted 180 mm forward, 80 mm backward); Seatback angle can be adjusted 30 degrees forward, 50 degrees backward.

Second Row Manual Seat (5-seat)

Adjusting seatback



Step 1: Lean on the seatback, pull seatback adjustment lever upward;

Step 2: Adjust seatback to the desired angle by body leaning and release the lever;

Step 3: Apply force backward against the seatback to ensure that the seatback is locked properly.

Folding seatback



Step 1: Adjust the front seat position forward;

Step 2: Adjust the second row seat head restraints, and fold up center armrest;

Step 3: Pull seatback adjustment lever upward, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand.

READ

When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

Third Row Seat (7-seat) (If Equipped)

Manual adjusting seat



Step 1: Adjust the third row seat head restraints;

Step 2: Pull seatback adjustment lever upward, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand, the rear seatback is flush with back door carpet after folding.

READ

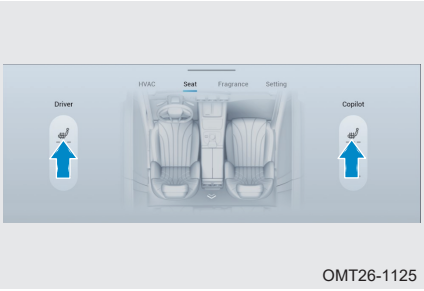
When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

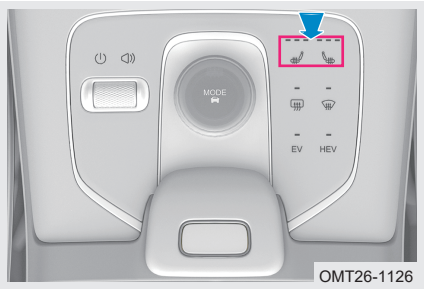
Seat Heating Function

Front seat heating



OMT26-1125

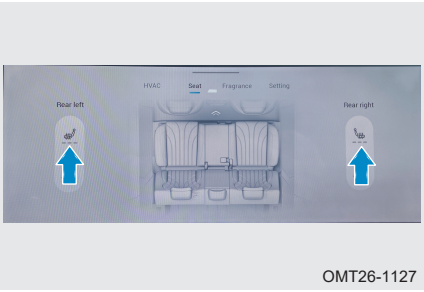
With vehicle in READY state, click the " " button on the front seat setting screen to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.



OMT26-1126

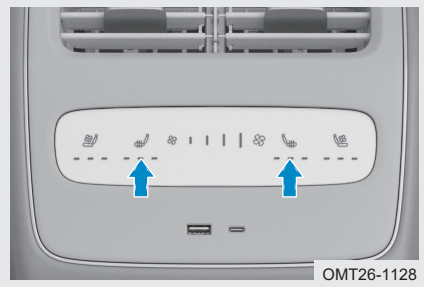
With vehicle in READY state, click the " " button on the auxiliary fascia console to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

Second row seat heating (if equipped)



OMT26-1127

With vehicle in READY state, click the " " button on the second row seat setting screen to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.



OMT26-1128

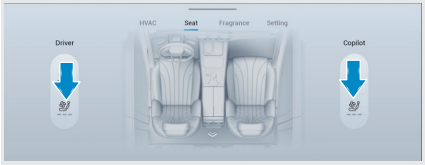
With vehicle in READY state, click the " " button on the second row A/C panel to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

READ

- Seat heating and seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.
- Audio main screen displays air conditioning system operation screen by sliding up audio main screen from bottom.
- Front seat heating and the second row seat heating are not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Seat Ventilation Function

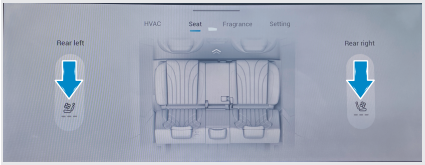
Front seat ventilation



OMT26-1129

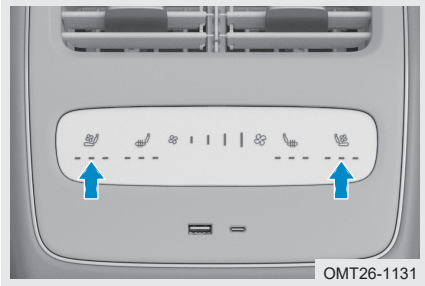
With vehicle in READY state, click the " " button on the front seat setting screen to turn on the seat ventilation function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

Second row seat ventilation (if equipped)



OMT26-1130

With vehicle in READY state, click the " " button on the second row seat setting screen to turn on the seat ventilation function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.



OMT26-1131

With vehicle in READY state, click the " " button on the second row A/C panel to turn on the seat ventilation function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

READ

- Seat heating and seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.
- Audio main screen displays air conditioning system operation screen by sliding up audio main screen from bottom.
- Front seat ventilation and the second row seat ventilation are not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Seat Memory Function

Driver seat memory

With vehicle in READY state, after adjusting the seat position, the audio system pops up the seat memory screen, restore/save and update the memorized position according to your needs.

Second row seat memory



Memory switch setting: Long press memory "M" button for several seconds, and immediately long press the memory position "1" button/ memory position "2" button for several seconds after instrument cluster emits a prompt tone, the position is stored in the corresponding button pressed.

Memory switch recall: Long press memory position "1" button/memory position "2" button until the seat operates to release the finger, seat will be adjusted to the corresponding position automatically.

READ

- Front seat memory and the second row seat memory are not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- Seat memory and outside rear view mirror memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

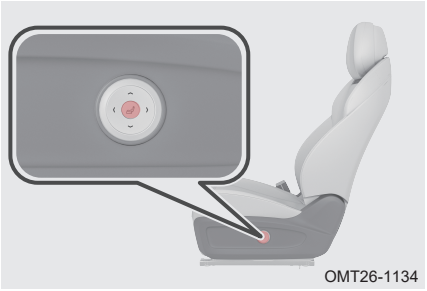
WARNING

When seat memory binding function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to seat memory function.

Seat Massage (If Equipped)

The driver seat has a massage function with 3 massage intensities (in order: low/medium/high) and 5 massage modes (in order: wave/catwalk/cross/ease/jump), which can effectively relieve the back fatigue of long distance driving.

Driver seat massage function (if equipped)



OMT26-1134

With vehicle in READY state, press the massage function switch on driver seat to turn on the massage function of driver seat.

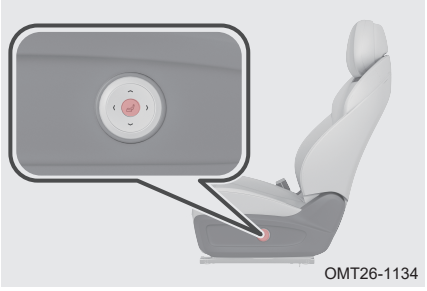
The massage function will automatically shut off after operating for about 15 minutes.



OMT26-1135

With vehicle in READY state, the adjust massage intensity and massage mode through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Comfort - Driver Seat Massage.

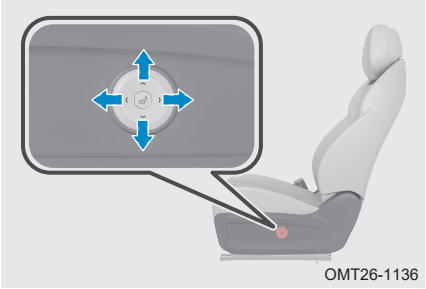
Front passenger seat massage function (if equipped)



OMT26-1134

With vehicle in READY state, press the massage function switch on front passenger seat to turn on the massage function of front passenger seat.

The massage function will automatically shut off after operating for about 15 minutes.



OMT26-1136

Shortly press " ⬆ " button once to adjust one massage mode forwards at a time.

Shortly press " ⬇ " button once to adjust one massage mode backwards at a time.

Shortly press " ⬅ " button once to increase one massage intensity at a time.

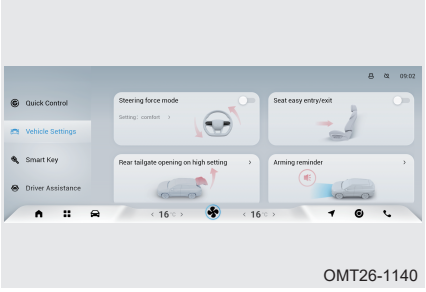
Shortly press " ➡ " button once to reduce one massage intensities at a time.



OMT26-1135

With vehicle in READY state, the adjust massage intensity and massage mode through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Comfort - Copilot Seat Massage.

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function



OMT26-1140

With vehicle in READY state, turn on easy seat access/exit through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.

When vehicle is switched to powered-off from READY state and driver door is opened, driver seat automatically moves backward a certain distance so that driver can get off conveniently.

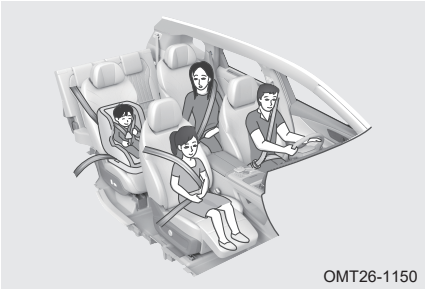
When vehicle is switched to powered-on state from powered-off, the driver seat moves forwards a certain distance automatically for easy starting off.

⚠ WARNING

When easy seat access function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to easy seat access function.

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt


OMT26-1150

We strongly recommend the driver and passengers to wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in case of an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Seat belt indicator

Front seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h, red indicator "" in instrument cluster flashes; When vehicle speed is not less than 25 km/h, red indicator "" in instrument cluster flashes, accompanied by sound alarm.

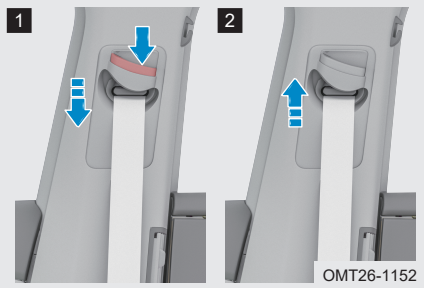
Second row seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is no less than 25 km/h, red indicator "" in instrument cluster remains on for 30 seconds and then goes off, accompanied by sound alarm.

READ

The front passenger/second row seat belt alarm function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Using seat belt correctly

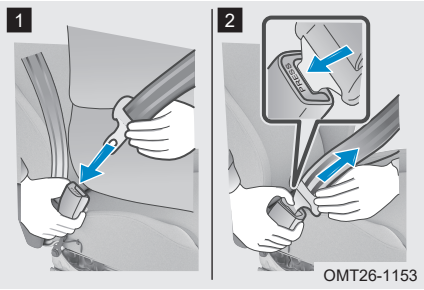
Step 1: Adjust the height of front seat belts;



1 Adjust downward: Push seat belt adjuster downward while pressing adjusting button.

2 Adjust upward: Push seat belt adjuster upward.

Step 2: Fasten/release seat belt;



1 Fasten seat belt: Push the tab into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.

2 Release seat belt: Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

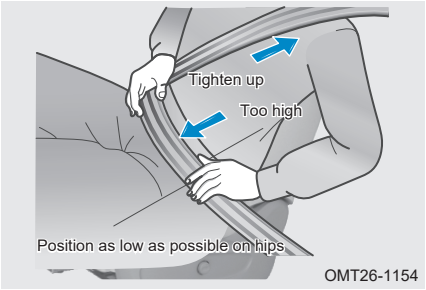
READ

- The seat belt will lock when the vehicle is on a slope.
- The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly, but it will not lock if it is pulled out slowly.
- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- Only front seat belt can perform height adjustment. The usage method of the second row seat belts is same as the front seat belt. For the specific buckle position, please refer to your own vehicle.

CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Step 3: Adjust the position of seat belts.



To adjust the seatback angle, sit up straightly and well back in the seat. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips — not on your waist, then pull the shoulder belt upward so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

⚠ CAUTION

- Avoid loose fitting clothes when driving. These can prevent the seatbelt fitting correctly and can affect the protection offered.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries during a collision.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when the back of the passenger and the seat keep a complete fit.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the protection effect of seat belt in an accident.
- We recommend that children be seated in the second row seat. Use child restraint system with ISOFIX function according to the child's height. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on second row seat.

Maintaining seat belt



Check seat belts regularly for cuts, fraying, loose and stretched belt (-such as after a traffic accident). If the belt is damaged, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor or buckle mechanism.
- Do not use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it with artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, it may damage the vehicle and cause personal injury.

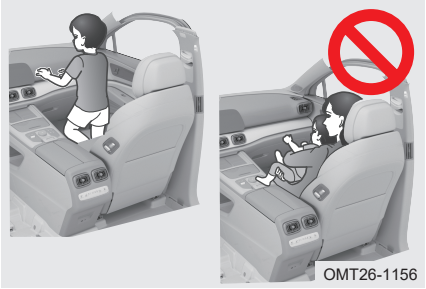
⚠ WARNING

- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident and even if seat belt is not obviously damaged, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and replace.
- Ensure that the belt can function properly and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. If there is any need above, have any necessary service carried out by authorized service station.

Seat belt precautions

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a child

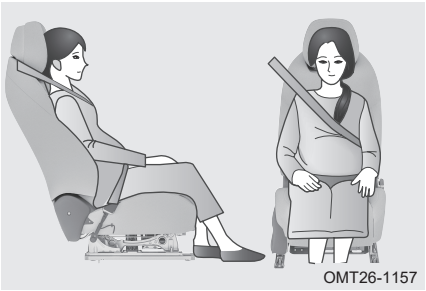
The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system (for details, refer to "Child Restraint System") appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large to use a child restraint system, the child should sit in the second row seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.


OMT26-1156

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child is at risk of serious injury or even death during a collision.

Failure to use a child restraint system (for example: let a child stand or kneel on seats; let a child sit on an adult's laps; holding a child in arms). This may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or unintended events.

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman

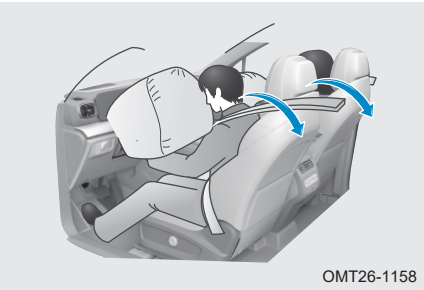

OMT26-1157

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, it may cause serious injuries or death during a collision.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. into the buckle to prevent from properly latching tab and buckle.
- After inserting the tab, make sure that the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap belt and shoulder belt are not twisted.
- It is not allowed to insert the non-genuine seat belt tab into buckle. Long-term use will easily lead to damage of the seat belt buckle and make it unusable.
- If seat belt does not function normally, please contact the authorized service station immediately. Do not use the corresponding seat belt during this period.

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)


OMT26-1158

1. Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.
2. In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
3. During a severe impact, seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
4. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
5. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas. The produced gas does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.

⚠ WARNING

- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator remains on, and seat belts cannot be retracted / pulled out. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not modify, remove, hit or open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag sensor and assembly wire. Otherwise, it may cause death or serious injuries during a collision.

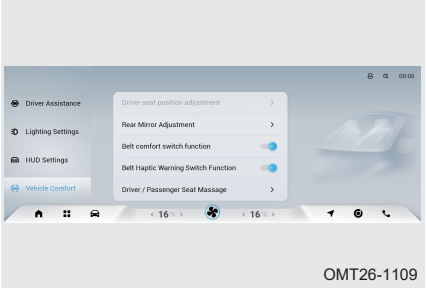
Function limit

■ In the following cases, the seat belt pretensioner may not work properly:

1. Modify suspension system.
2. Modify front body section.
3. Repair the seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
4. Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
5. Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

Active Pre-tensioner Seat Belt (If Equipped)

Active pre-tensioner seat belt combines driving safety and comfort. It is used to tighten the seat belt to remind the driver under dangerous vehicle conditions such as driving fatigue, emergency braking and driving on a curve, and restrain the driver on the seatback to reduce collision injuries.



OMT26-1109

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on driver seat belt clearance elimination, driver seat belt shaking warning through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Comfort.

Seat belt clearance elimination function

After the driver fastens seat belt, the speed reaches 10 km/h or higher, if the slack of webbing exceeds a certain value, or the driver leans forward a large range and then returns to the normal sitting position, the driver leans forward a large range and then returns to the normal sitting position, the webbing will automatically retract, eliminating the clearance between driver and seat belt webbing, and achieving better restraint protection effect.

Seat belt shaking warning function

During driving, when the active pre-tightening seat belt receives the danger signal from front collision warning, or the sleepy signal sent from fatigue driving and the warning signal of off-hand driving on the highway for more than a certain time, seat belt will be triggered to shake and remind driver of driving safety in the sense of touch.

Seat belt advance tightening function

During driving, in case of dangerous conditions such as emergency turning, emergency braking, emergency avoidance, etc., the webbing will be tightened in advance to restrain driver on seatback, reducing the risk of casualties.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not modify or repair the active pre-tightening seat belt by yourself. If the active pre-tightening seat belt fails, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Although the active pre-tightening seat belt can remind you the danger or avoid or reduce the injury when danger occurs, you still need to drive carefully to avoid danger.
- In order to ensure the reliable operation of the active pre-tightening seat belt, the number of functions of the active pre-tightening seat belt is limited. When the triggering number of a certain function reaches the upper limit (the instrument cluster will have a reminder message), the corresponding function will no longer be triggered, and other functions will not be affected. Please go to a authorized service station for replacement in time.

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System

According to accident statistics, a child is safer sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt meet international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

This instruction only provides installation instructions for child restraint systems (ISOFIX). For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. We will take no responsibility for an accident caused by using a child restraint system.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system.

Child Safety Seat Grouping

Only a child safety seat that is approved and suitable for the child is allowed to be used. Children taller than 1.5 meters can use the vehicle seat belts as would an adult. If a child safety seat needs to be used, it must comply with relevant regulations or standards.

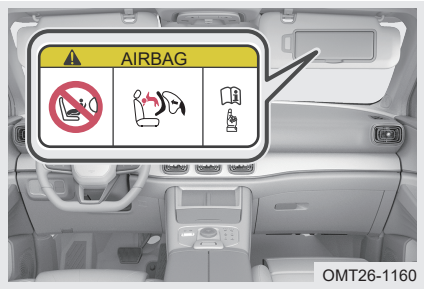
Seat Position	Driver	Front Passenger		2nd Row Leftsen-ger	2nd Row Middle	2nd Row Middle Right	3nd Row(if equipp-ed)
		Passen-ger Airbag ON	Passe-nger Airbag OFF				
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	N/A	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	no

i-Size seating position (yes/no)	N/A	no	no	yes	no	yes	no
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	N/A	no	no	no	no	no	no
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	N/A	no	no	R1/R2X/R2/R3	no	R1/R2X/R2/R3	no
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	N/A	no	no	F2X/F2/F3	no	F2X/F2/F3	no
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	N/A	no	no	B2/B3	no	B2/B3	no

Note:

- The child seat category is defined according to ECE R16/R44/R129, you can find the category of child seat on it's specification. The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.
- If it is absolutely necessary for you to install a child seat to the front passenger seat, be sure to turn passenger airbag off. Adjust front passenger seat to the highest position before installing universal CRS on it.
- It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support base or with a support leg on the middle seat of the 2nd row.
- Only universal belted child restraint systems can be used on the middle seat of the 2nd row.

Child restraint system precautions



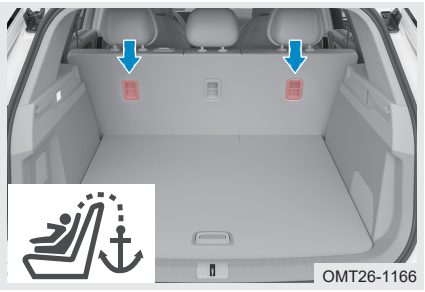
This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

- When using a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be OFF, Refer to "- Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag".

- Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.
- Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.

It is the driver's responsibility to comply to the instructions provided, and to the instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point



This model is equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back of the rear seats.

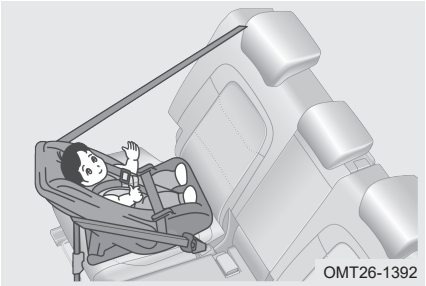
Before using a top tether strap, remove the seating position head restraint and luggage compartment cover. With the child restraint on the seat, attach the top tether strap to the anchorage, and tighten to remove all slack. Refer to instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

READ
• Ensure all removed head restraints are stowed safely. • After correct installation of the child restraint and top tether, the luggage compartment cover can be re-installed.

⚠ WARNING

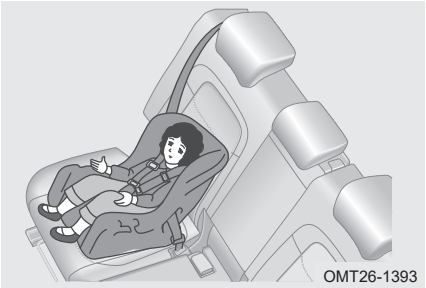
Ensure the top tether strap anchor is attached correctly. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to the child.

■ Rearward-facing child restraint system


OMT26-1392

A rearward facing child restraint is installed to face to the rear of the vehicle. Only install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the airbag is OFF. It is recommended children use a rearward facing child restraint system up to 4 yers old.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system


OMT26-1393

A forward facing child restraint is installed to face to the front of the vehicle. It is recommended children use a forward facing child restraint system when older than 4 yers old.

■ Heightening child restraint system


OMT26-1394

For larger children that cannot fit in a child restraint system with a high back, they may occupy a second row outboard seat using a booster seat, either attached to the lower anchorage points or belted, as described in the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Installing Child Restraint System

Child restraint system



The rear outside seats are equipped with ISOFIX / i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see illustration) located on the seat back, directly above the associated anchorages. Lift or remove the ISOFIX cover to access the anchorages.

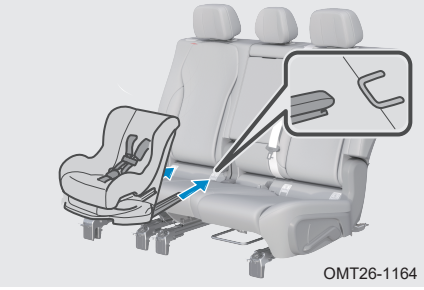
1. X: The position of ISOFIX does not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of this weight group or this size class.
2. IL: It is suitable for the special ISOFIX child restraint system on the list. These restraint system may be special vehicles, restricted or semi-general types.
3. IUF: It is suitable for the forward-facing general ISOFIX child restraint system approved by this weight group.
4. (1): For child restraint system without ISO/XX size class mark (A to G), if it is required to know the suitable weight group, please check the model list of ISOFIX child restraint system.

Installing child restraint system

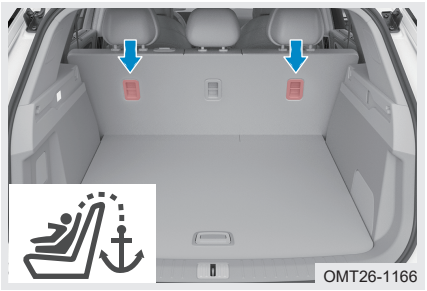


Step 1: Find the lower retaining ring used to secure child restraint system;

Step 2: Put the child restraint system on second row seat;



Step 3: Insert and secure lower hook of child restraint system to lower retaining ring;



Step 4: Pull out the webbing of the child restraint system and fix it with the upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) for forward-facing child restraint system (as shown in the illustration).

Note: According to the child restraint system type you purchased, check if it needs to be fixed with the upper fixing point (TOP TETHER).

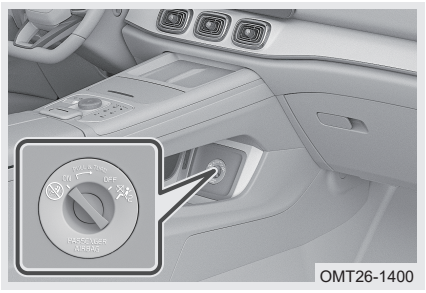
READ

- Before use, please remove the head restraint where the child restraint system to be installed, and then hang the hook of child restraint system to the fixing point to avoid the strap of the hook directly over the top of the head restraint or bypass the head restraint, and the head restraint and the strap should not interfere.
- After the upper strap hook is hung into the fixing point, be sure to tighten the strap and not loosen; For detailed methods of fixing and tightening the upper strap of child restraint system, please strictly follow the instruction manual provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- After installing child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Child restraint system must be installed in second row seat.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system on a set of retaining rings.
- Do not allow the upper strap to cross or bypass the head restraint, and be sure to tighten the strap after installation. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to children.
- If retaining ring device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system, install the child restraint system on the second row right side seat.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. We will not be liable for any accident caused this way.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check if the child restraint system is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. If the child restraint system is not correctly installed, the child is at risk of serious injury or even death during a collision.
- If the child restraint system interferes with locking device of front seat, do not install child restraint system in second row seat. The child and front passenger may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.
- Do not allow child to play with the child restraint system lock function belt. Avoid belt twists around a child's neck, if so, it may not be released, leading to chocking, other serious injuries or even death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be released, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- When the child restraint system is not in use, it should also be fixed properly on the seat. Do not place unfixed child restraint system in the passenger cabin.
- If it is necessary to remove child restraint system, take it out after removing or store it properly in luggage compartment. Otherwise, it may cause serious injuries during a collision or other events.

Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag



Airbag enabling/disabling switch is located below the auxiliary fascia console.

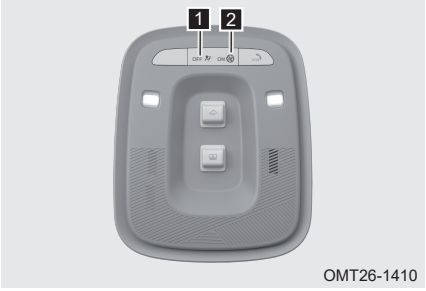
■ Disabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch to OFF position while pulling the switch outward, the front passenger airbag is disabled and the disabling status indicator will come on.

■ Enabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch from OFF to ON, re-enable the front passenger airbag and the enabling status indicator will come on. It is now safe to sit in the front passenger seat.

Airbag status indicator



1 Disabling status indication

2 Enabling status indication

⚠ WARNING

- Remember to subsequently enable the front passenger airbag when an adult occupant is seated in the front passenger seat. It is the driver's responsibility to confirm the passenger airbag status is correct for the occupant in the front passenger seat.
- In the event a rearward facing child restraint system needs to be installed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be disabled. Otherwise, it may cause serious injury or even death to young children in the event of an accident.

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat

Introduction

Reminder for children staying in rear seat is to identify if driver forgets the child in rear seat by mistake by judging the rear door switch logic, and to remind driver through the emergency flashers. The vehicle activates a reminder when either of the following conditions is met.

Reminder triggering condition

- After the vehicle is unlocked, any rear door has been opened, and if any rear door has not been opened again before locking the vehicle, a reminder signal will be sent.
- After the vehicle is unlocked, both sides of the rear door are opened, if only one side of the door is opened again before locking the vehicle, the other side is not opened again, a reminder signal will be issued.

READ

- With vehicle in READY state, system turns on by default.
- In-car child detection can be turned off in the audio system.
- During the duration of the initial reminder signal, if the vehicle is unlocked and any door (other than the back door) is opened, the hazard warning light stops flashing.

3-1. Key Information
Smart Key 81
Effective Range 83
Keyless Entry 85
Vehicle Arming..... 87
Immobilizer System 88
Vehicle Locating with Smart Key (If Equipped) 89
Remote Starting for Smart Key 89

3-2. Doors
Door Unlocking/Locking 90
Door Mechanical Switch..... 92
Power Child Lock 93

3-3. Windows
Power Windows 93
Second Row Window Sunshade (If Equipped) 95
Window Remote Control Function 96
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)..... 96

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof
Panoramic Moon Roof 98
Moon Roof Remote Control Function 99
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 100

3-5. Audio System
Audio View..... 101
Shortcut Menu 102
Atmosphere Lamp..... 102
Local Setting 103
Vehicle Settings 103
Audio Button..... 106
Voice Recognition Function 106
Phone-link..... 107

3-6. Air Conditioning System
Automatic A/C 110
A/C Setting..... 112
Air Conditioning Operation..... 112
Air Conditioning Heating Operation..... 117
Air Conditioning Cooling Operation..... 117
Intelligent Mode 119
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box.... 119
Air Outlets Airflow Control 120

3-7. Wireless Charging
Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped) 121

3-8. FOTA Upgrade
FOTA Upgrade (If Equipped) 122
Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade 124
Operation for Upgrade Now 124
Appointment Upgrade Operation..... 127
Upgrade Result Prompt..... 128

Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading 129

Network Security Notification 130

3-9. Remote Control System

Remote Control System (If Equipped)..... 130

Quick access to management 131

3-10. Storage Space

Storage Space..... 133

3-11. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Power Outlet 136

3-12. USB Port

Front USB Port 136

Rear USB Port..... 137

3-13. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors..... 137

3-14. Hood

Opening/Closing Hood..... 137

3-15. Back Door

Power Back Door 138

Back Door Emergency Opening..... 142

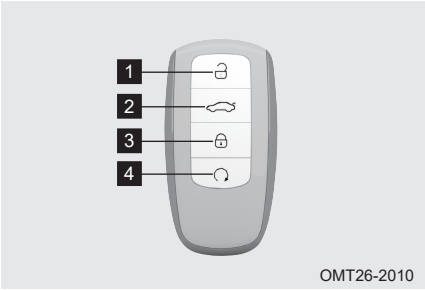
3-16. Fuel Tank Cap

Electric Fuel Tank Cap 142

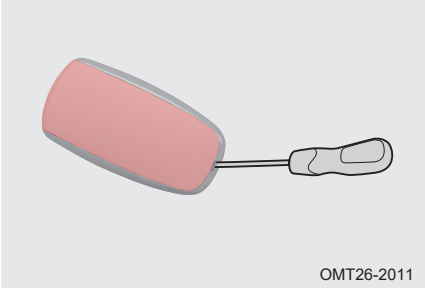
3-1. Key Information

Smart Key

Smart key is used to remotely lock/unlock doors and open back door within about 20 m (no blind spot and magnetic interference) of the vehicle (varies depending on the configuration of vehicle models).



1 Unlock button
2 Back door opener button
3 Lock button
4 Remote starting button



The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to lock/unlock doors in emergency after prying off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape and taking out mechanical key. After use, return it to original place for easy-to-carry (for details, refer to "Door" section).

Function limit

■ If any of the following conditions occurs, the smart key battery may be low or depleted:

1. The remote control distance gradually decreases.
2. Remote control function does not work even there is no interference.
3. Instrument cluster prompts "Smart key battery is low".

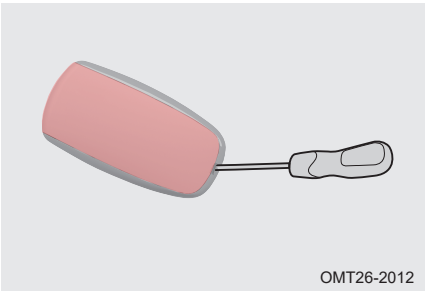
■ In the following conditions, the smart key may not work properly:

1. There are more than one smart keys being used nearby.
2. The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
3. The smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
4. The smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone or personal computer).
5. The key is near wireless communication devices that have the similar frequency with the remote control key (such as portable radio).

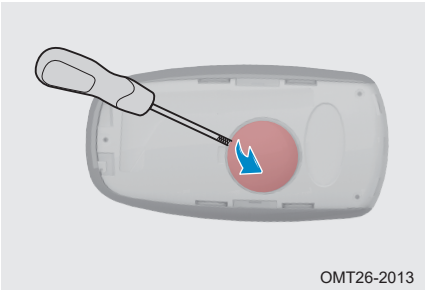
6. The key is near facilities that generate strong radio waves (such as TV tower, radio station, power station, airport, train station).

⚠ CAUTION
• This product is a low frequency radio device and can be interfered by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical equipment. • Do not change the transmitting frequency, increase the transmitter power (-including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission. • When using the product, do not interfere with legal wireless communications; In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

Replacing smart key battery


OMT26-2012

Step 1: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and take out mechanical key;


OMT26-2013

Step 2: Pry off battery in smart key using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and install new battery with the positive (+) side up;

Step 3: Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal;

Step 4: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly. If the smart key still does not function correctly, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

READ

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

CAUTION

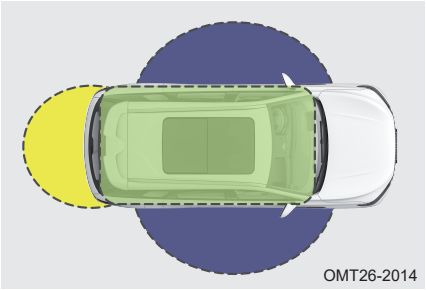
- Only use the recommended battery type.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery with oily hands. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.
- There may be some difficulties when replacing key battery, that might lead to damage if you are replacing it by yourself, so it is recommended that you replace it at authorized service station.

WARNING

Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components, failure to do so may cause death or serious injury to the child.

Effective Range

Detectable area



Starting or switching power area

Start or switch power mode when smart key is inside the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking area

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range of high performance low-frequency antenna of door.

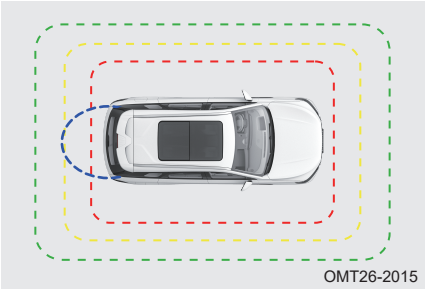
Opening back door area

Open the back door when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outside low-frequency antenna.

READ

Low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry or one-button start function, ensure that distance between smart key and low-frequency antenna meets the requirement.

Automatic sensing area



Smart welcome lights ON area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the welcome lights will turn on.

Away from locking area

Leave the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will lock automatically.

Approaching to unlocking area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will unlock automatically.

Smart opening back door area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors cannot unlock/lock automatically (refer to "Back Door" for details).

READ

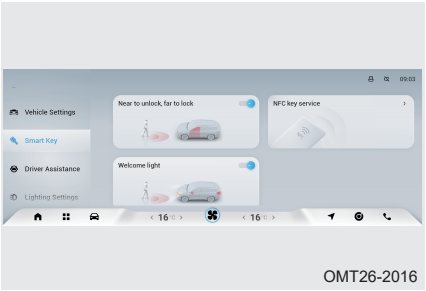
- Please leave the vehicle after the four doors, hood and back door are closed, otherwise, the automatic sensing lock function may not work properly.
- Functions such as keyless entry, welcome function, approach unlocking, away locking etc. may be affected due to the interference of surrounding environment while carrying smart key on your person. When the functions are abnormal, please change to other methods (such as manual unlocking, remote unlocking) to unlock/lock or start the vehicle.

Function limit

■ Smart key may not be detected in the following conditions:

1. Smart key is in luggage compartment.
2. When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
3. Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources (such as portable power source, interphone or other phones).

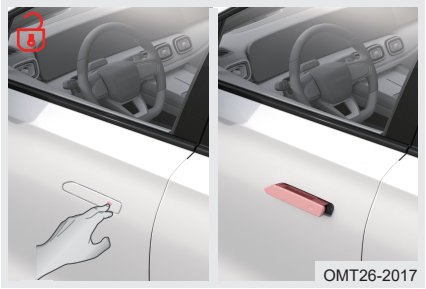
Keyless Entry



OMT26-2016

With vehicle in READY state, and turn on Approach Unlocking and Away Locking through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Smart Key.

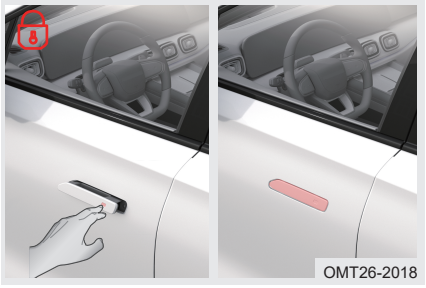
Unlocking doors


OMT26-2017

Method 1: Touch the hidden door handle sensing area while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors unlock automatically (hidden door handle extends automatically).

Method 2: Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, welcome lights turn on, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors unlock automatically (hidden door handle extends automatically).

Locking doors


OMT26-2018

Method 1: Touch the hidden door handle sensing area while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors lock automatically (hidden door handle retracts automatically).

Method 2: Leave vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors lock automatically (hidden door handle retracts automatically).

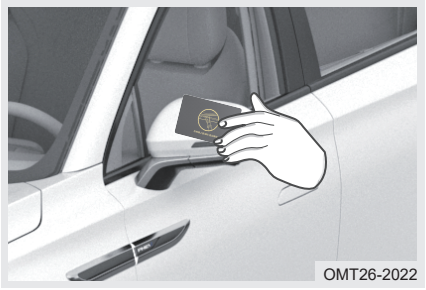
READ

- Approach unlocking/away locking function will be turned off after 3 days since vehicle is locked. Restarting the vehicle will resume the approach unlocking/away locking function.
- When using the vehicle in winter, if the door handle is frozen and cannot be extended, use a card to remove the ice layer between the handle and the sheet metal gap, at the same time, you can use the bottom of your fist to tap the door handle slightly, and increase the hitting strength as needed until the ice is completely removed. Once the door handle can be extended, open and close the door several times. Make sure that the door handle returns to its original position before entering the vehicle. Never hit the vehicle with excessive force to avoid dents, and hit the handle gently.

CAUTION

- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc., otherwise, failing to sense lock/unlock may be caused.
- The sensing lock function can be operated only when vehicle is powered off, four doors, hood and back door are closed and no smart key is placed inside the vehicle.
- After leaving the vehicle and closing four doors, hood and back door, if smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If smart key is brought outside the range of approximately 2.5 m of the vehicle and turn signal lights do not flash and horn does not sound (-successful arming prompt), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid locking failure caused by misoperation or unsatisfied condition.
- After sensing unlocking/locking function is activated, if smart key keeps near the vehicle for more than 3 minutes, the vehicle will lock automatically, if the key still does not leave after another 3 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily turned off and can be activated only after opening any door, front compartment cover or back door and then closing four doors, hood and back door.

NFC card key unlocking/locking (if equipped)



OMT26-2022

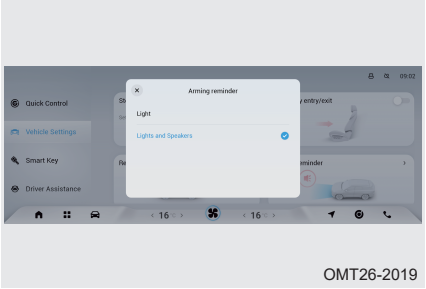
Bring NFC card key near the NFC mark on left outside rear view mirror. After a few seconds, vehicle can be unlocked/locked. The hidden door handle will automatically extend after unlocking successfully or automatically retract after locking successfully to unlock/lock the door.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not bend NFC card with excessive force.
- Do not place the NFC card key in a high temperature environment (such as the dashboard).
- Do not place the NFC card key with other hard objects to prevent wear.
- Do not place the NFC card key on NFC sensing area with a phone that has turned on NFC function.
- When unlocking/locking with NFC card, attach the card to NFC mark on outside rear view mirror for at least 1 ~ 2 s to realize unlocking/locking function.
- Do not use NFC card key with anything that will cut off electromagnetic waves (such as metal seals, metal mobile phone back cases, etc.).
- NFC card key is a key equipped for the vehicle based on NFC communication mode. In order to ensure the safety of your vehicle, please keep it properly. If you lose it, it is recommended to report the loss to authorized service station immediately and re-match the card key.

Vehicle Arming

Arming operation



OMT26-2019

With vehicle in READY state, and set Arming Prompt to Light/Light and Horn through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.


OMT26-2020

■ Arming mode

With vehicle powered off, four doors, hood and back door closed, perform locking operation and the doors are locked, vehicle will enter arming mode.

Successful arming prompt: Turn signal lights flash once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

Arming failure prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice and anti-theft horn does not sound.

■ Secondary arming mode

After disarming, if four doors, hood and back door are not operated, the vehicle will be locked automatically and enter arming mode after 30 seconds. If any of the four doors, hood and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary arming mode.

READ

- If four doors are closed and hood and back door are not completely closed, the central lock locks once and vehicle anti-theft system is not armed successfully.
- If hood and back door are closed and any door is not closed, the central lock will lock and then unlock, and vehicle anti-theft system is not armed successfully.

Disarming operation


OMT26-2021

With vehicle in arming mode, perform vehicle unlocking operation and vehicle exits arming mode.

Successful disarming prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice.

Immobilizer System

Electronic immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into electronic immobilizer module, the built-in chip will prevent vehicle from starting.

■ In the following conditions, electronic immobilizer system may not work properly:

1. Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
2. Modify or remove electronic immobilizer system.
3. Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION
Do not match the smart key by yourself, otherwise the electronic immobilizer system may not work properly.

Vehicle anti-theft system

When vehicle is in arming mode and illegal entry is detected, the vehicle anti-theft system will send sound-light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an illegal opening state. (Due to market variances, vehicle anti - theft alarm methods differ. Rely on the actual vehicle for the accurate setup.)

READ
• The vehicle anti-theft system will not be enabled if the doors are locked by mechanical key. It is recommended to lock doors by smart key. • After locking doors with smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front left door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key. • When vehicle anti-theft system is triggered, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated by pressing unlock button on smart key or with vehicle in power on state. • Before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and vehicle is armed successfully to prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system or vehicle theft.

Vehicle Locating with Smart Key (If Equipped)

Press lock button on smart key twice continuously within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn signal lights flash 10 times, this allows you to find your vehicle easily.

Remote Starting for Smart Key

With vehicle in arming mode and smart key is not in vehicle, long press lock button or remote starting button on the smart key for several seconds to start it remotely and A/C operates automatically at the same time. The vehicle will automatically powered off after 15 minutes of remote starting.

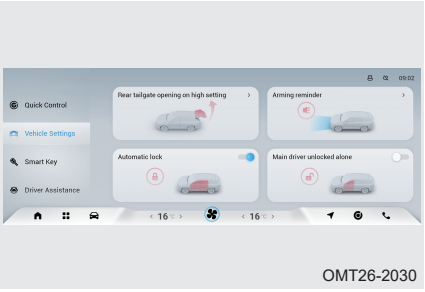
READ

- There must be no person in the vehicle including the operator when starting the vehicle remotely.
- Distance when starting vehicle remotely using smart key should not exceed normal operating distance of smart key (20 m).
- After vehicle is started remotely, some functions cannot be operated (such as headlight combination switch, wiper combination switch, audio function), depress brake pedal while carrying smart key on your person, exit remote mode to restore normal operation.

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking

Main driver unlocked alone

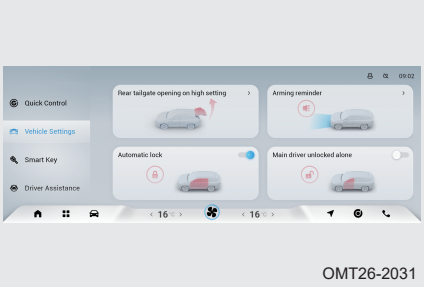


OMT26-2030

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Main Driver Unlocked Alone through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.

Only the driver door is unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the first time. Other three doors are unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the second time.

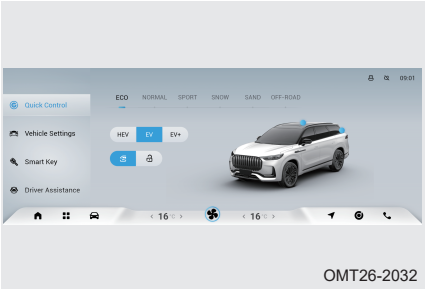
Automatic lock



OMT26-2031

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Automatic Lock through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings; Doors are automatically locked when four doors are closed and vehicle speed is more than 15 km/h.

Unlocking/locking doors



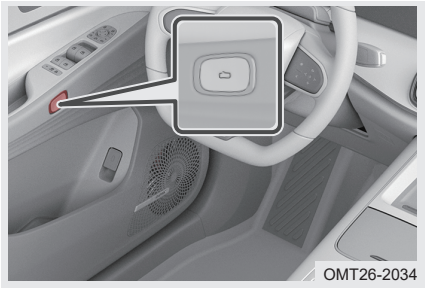
OMT26-2032

With vehicle in READY state, click central locking button through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Quick Control to unlock/lock doors.


OMT26-2033

Press "🔓" button to unlock the door; Press "🔒" button (indicator comes on) to lock the door.

Power door unlocking


OMT26-2034

When doors are unlocked, press "🚪" button to open the door.

When doors are locked, press "🚪" button for the first time to unlock the door, press the "🚪" button again to open the door.

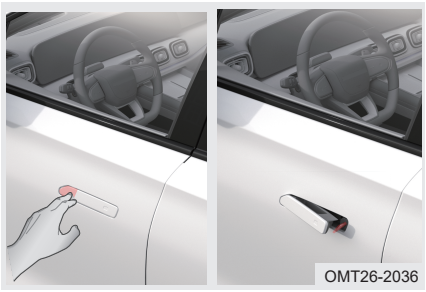

OMT26-2035

If the door cannot be opened by pressing "🚪" button, pull the spare inside handle up to open the door.

Door Mechanical Switch

Vehicle cannot be unlocked/locked electrically when battery (12 V) is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the doors can be unlocked/locked with door mechanical switch.

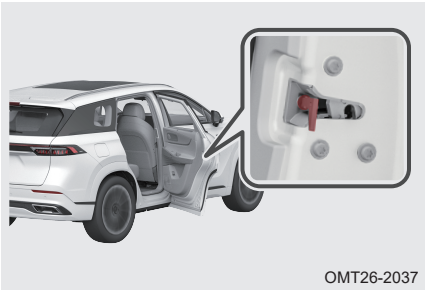
Locking/unlocking front left door manually


OMT26-2036

Step 1: Press and hold the front area of driver door outside handle to expand the hidden door handle;

Step 2: Pull the door handle, and insert the mechanical key into the key hole in the door handle, rotate it clockwise to lock the door and rotate it counterclockwise to unlock the door.

Locking front right door/second row doors

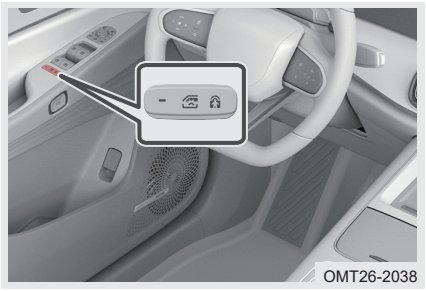

OMT26-2037

Open the door, insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder, turn the mechanical key counterclockwise to lock the rear left door, and turn the key clockwise to lock the front/rear right door.

READ

- If the doors can not be unlocked/locked electrically, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When using door mechanical switch, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If unsuccessful, please contact authorized service station as soon as possible.

Power Child Lock



Press "" switch, the passenger side window OFF switch indicator comes on, and the power child lock is locked. At this time, the rear door cannot be opened from inside, and can only be opened from outside. In this case, the passenger side window switch function is disabled.

READ

Even if any door is not opened within 2 minutes after vehicle power is switched to OFF, the power child lock can also be used.

WARNING

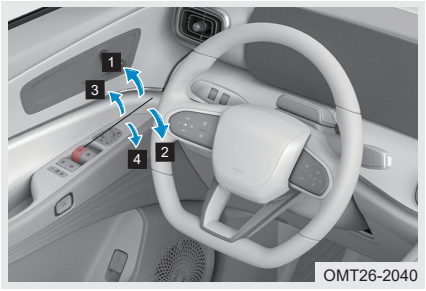
- The child lock is independent and cannot replace the central lock mechanism in any case.
- When a child is seated on the second row seats, always lock child locks to prevent the second row doors being opened accidentally while driving.
- After child lock is locked, in the event of a collision or other accident, if there is someone trapped inside vehicle and the second row door cannot be opened from the inside, please open it from outside the vehicle.
- In hot weather, if vehicle stalls and all doors and windows close, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, serious injury or even death may be caused by the sharp temperature rise even if it is a short time.

3-3. Windows

Power Windows

There are many ways to open/close windows, such as by window switch and remote control.

Usage methods



OMT26-2040

Automatic mode

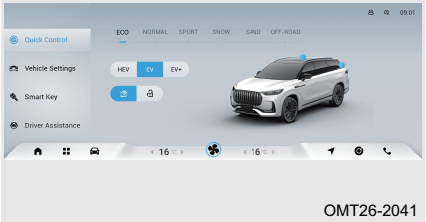
1 Pull the switch to top to make window go up automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.

2 Press the switch to bottom to make window go down automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.

Jog mode

3 Pull the switch upwards by one level to make window go up; release the switch to stop moving the window.

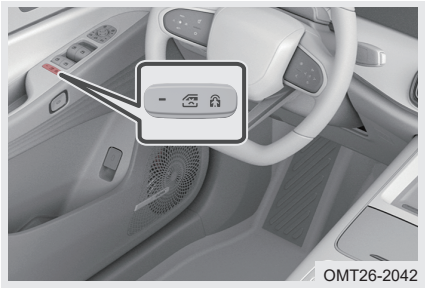
4 Press the switch downwards by one level to make window go down; release the switch to stop moving the window.



OMT26-2041

With vehicle in READY state, click vehicle window lock button through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Quick Control to turn on/off passenger side window OFF function.

After passenger side window OFF function is turned on, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle). The power child lock is locked simultaneously.


OMT26-2042

Press " " switch, turn on/off passenger side window OFF function.

After passenger side window OFF function is turned on, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle). The power child lock is locked simultaneously.

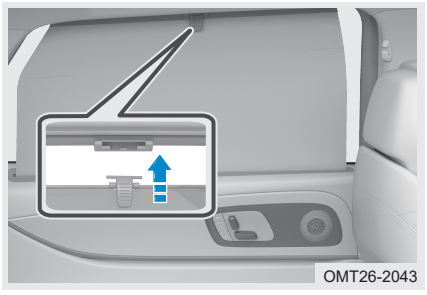
READ

- For details about remote window control, refer to "Remote Control System" section.
- Vehicles with window jam protection function have one-touch window up function.
- If front right / left door (exclude rear doors) is not opened within 2 minutes after switching vehicle to power off state, the power window can be operated.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating power window switch, window glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then operate it again, repeat this operation 3 - 5 cycles to resume.

WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. If accidental operation of window switch is made, children may be caught by the rising window.
- When vehicle is driving or before closing the window, make sure that all parts of passenger's body (such as hands) are in the vehicle, otherwise, personal injury may be caused.
- To avoid personal injury, it is driver's responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and especially to prevent children from using it incorrectly. Ensure that the vehicle is powered off or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Take extra care when closing windows, failure to do so may cause serious jamming and injury! For models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may not be activated, resulting in serious injury.

Second Row Window Sunshade (If Equipped)



Slowly pull the window sunshade upwards and fix it onto the hook.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> When window sunshade is stuck during use, do not operate it forcefully, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair.

Window Remote Control Function

Remote control window down function

With vehicle is powered off, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold, windows of four doors will go down automatically. If unlock button on smart key is released or any door is opened in this process, window will stop going down.

Remote control window up function (If Equipped)

With vehicle powered off, four doors are closed, lock button on smart key is pressed, the vehicle will enter arming status and four door window will go up automatically. Unlock/lock doors in automatic window up process and windows will stop going down.

> READ
>
> If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, turn signal lights flash 1 time and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm you that window may not close normally.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Before using remote control up window function, please take extra care. Remote control up/down window function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)

Jam protection function

During one-touch window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and go down slightly. To close window, move away obstacle and operate again.

To protect the window regulation system, window jam protection function and one-touch window up function will be canceled in some conditions to avoid potential safety hazard. At this time, the window only has the conventional up-down function. After jam protection learning, the one-touch window up function of corresponding door will return to normal.

Canceling jam protection function

If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when rising the window, the window will stop rising, jam protection function will be canceled. If the battery

(12 V) cable is disconnected during working or non-working process, jam protection function will be canceled.

Overheat protection function

To protect motor, if window up-down operation is performed continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window switch. After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

Manual learning function

If one-touch window up function and jam protection function do not operate, perform the following steps to resume function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

Step 1: With vehicle powered on;

Step 2: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully close the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 3: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully open the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 4: Try to operate automatic window up function;

Step 5: If window cannot close automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

If automatic window up function cannot resume after repeating the above steps, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Note: If window memory position is lost, it can also be set with remote control one-touch window up function. At this time, window will go down to bottom, then go up to top. Window can be closed normally while setting is successful.

READ

When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

⚠ CAUTION

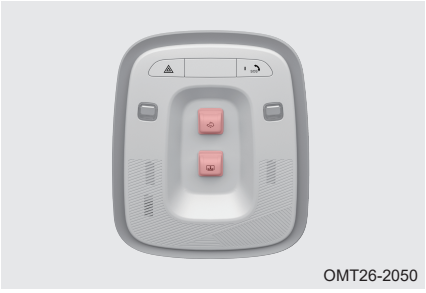
- If battery (12 V) cable is disconnected and reconnected, automatic window up function and jam protection function will not work.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even by intentionally pinching any part of your body. Failure to do so may cause damage to window regulation system mechanism or accidental personal injury.
- When closing window, always keep the window close area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function, otherwise, if there is a thin object and system cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone's hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury may be caused.

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof

There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch and remote control.

Usage methods



OMT26-2050

Opening/closing sunshade

Push " " switch backward when sunshade is closed, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push " " switch again, sunshade will slide to fully open position.

Push " " switch forward when sunshade is fully open, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push " " switch again, sunshade will slide to fully close position.

Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push " " switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

With moon roof tilted up, push " " switch forward to close moon roof. Or directly push the " " switch forward to automatically close the moon roof first, and then close the sunshade.

Opening/closing moon roof

With moon roof tilted up, push " " switch backward to slide and open the moon roof. Push " " switch again to slide and open the moon roof to the maximum position.

With moon roof open, push " " switch forward to close moon roof. Or directly push the " " switch forward to automatically close the moon roof first, and then close the sunshade.

READ

- For details about remote moon roof control, refer to "Remote Control System" section.
- If you find there is a false jam protection, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Moon roof switch and sunshade switch are designed in 2 levels; first level is manual control opening range; second level is automatic control opening range, please select a proper level according to your demands.

CAUTION

- Failure in moon roof jam protection function may cause initial memory position to be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate the position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, always drain it off before opening, to prevent water from flowing into cab.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water; after vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before use.

WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. If accidental operation of moon roof switch is made, their heads or hands may be hurt.
- When vehicle is driving or before closing the moon roof, make sure that all parts of passenger's body (such as hands) are in the vehicle, otherwise, personal injury may be caused.

Moon Roof Remote Control Function

Moon roof remote open function

With vehicle is powered off and four doors are closed, press and hold unlock button on smart key for a few seconds, sunshade is opened and then moon roof is opened; press the lock button during opening of moon roof, the moon roof stops moving.

Moon roof remote close function

With vehicle is powered off and four doors are closed, press lock button on smart key, and vehicle enters arming mode. Moon roof closes automatically first, then the sunshade closes; Press the lock button, the moon roof complete the current operation.

⚠ WARNING

Before using moon roof remote close function, please take extra care. Moon roof remote close function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by moon roof.

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function

Jam protection function

With one-touch close of moon roof movable glass (sunshade), if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, the closing will be interrupted and the moon roof (sunshade) will rebound.

Manual learning function

When it cannot be closed by one-touch, rear moon roof tilting up cannot be opened and close by one-touch, the moon roof glass cannot be opened or closed normally, sunshade cannot be opened or closed, follow the instructions below to reset.

Step 1: With vehicle powered on, operate moon roof/sunshade to the full open/close position; Manually long press moon roof/sunshade close button, stop long press until a "click" sound is heard from moon roof/sunshade motor (moon roof glass/sunshade moves forward/backward slightly). Try to open or close again with one-touch.

Note: The long press is invalid until moon roof moves to close position. If the rebound is triggered when the operation does not respond or is off, perform Step 2.

Step 2: Operate moon roof/sunshade auto open button, release button. During moon roof/sunshade automatically opening, long press moon roof/sunshade close button; Obverse moon roof/sunshade movement, starting from pause to close position. Press and hold close button, until a "click" reset sound is heard from moon roof/sunshade motor (moon roof glass/sunshade moves forward/backward slightly).

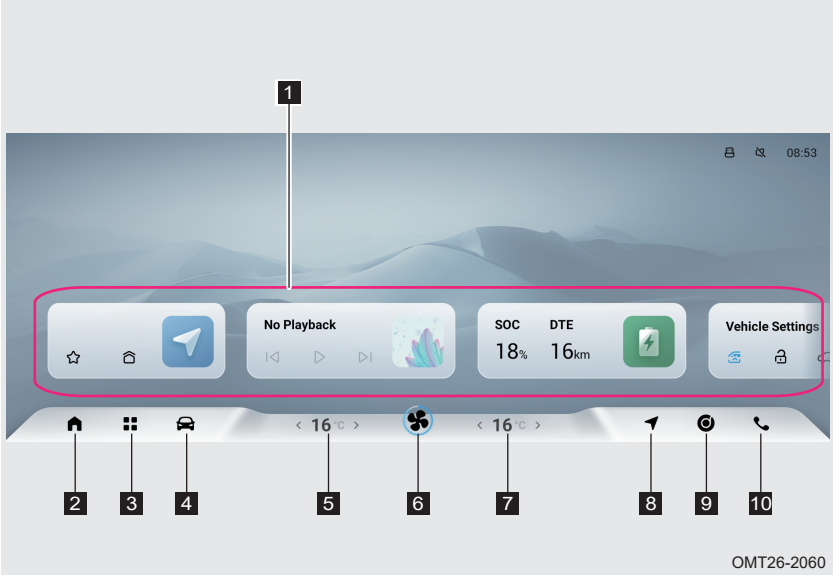
Note: Be sure to release the button during the automatic opening of moon roof/sunshade and then close it.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the problem still cannot be solved after repeating the above operations, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- If battery (12 V) cable is disconnected and reconnected, moon roof initialization may be lost, causing the moon roof to fail to open or close.
- When closing the moon roof, always keep the moon roof close area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function. Otherwise, the jam protection function will not work when moon roof encounters thin objects. If the occupant's hand or finger is caught, it can cause serious injury.
- Jam protection function is a kind of occupant safety protection function. Never try to activate it by repeatedly using various objects, improper methods or even with some part of body. Failure to do so may damage moon roof function or cause accidental personal injury.

3-5. Audio System

Audio View



1 Card interactive interface
Swipe to view and click on the corresponding APP application to enter.

2 Home page
Click to return to home page of audio system.

3 APP application
Click to enter APP application screen.

4 Vehicle setting
Click to enter vehicle setting screen.

5 Driver temperature adjustment
Click to adjust the air conditioning temperature for driver.

6 Click to pop up the air conditioning system operation screen.

7 Front passenger temperature adjustment
Click to adjust air conditioning temperature for front passenger.

8 Navigation
Click to enter navigation screen.

9 Multimedia
Click to enter media screen, including radio/FM/DAB/RDS radio.

10 Telephone
Click to enter telephone or Bluetooth phone setting screen.

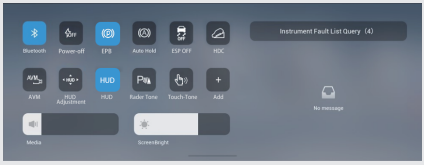
Audio button on auxiliary fascia console

Power button/volume adjustment roller

Short press to turn on/off the audio system. In case of abnormal operation, the system can be restarted by long pressing the power button. Push up to increase the volume, push down to decrease the volume.

Note: Audio main screen displays air conditioning system operation screen by sliding up audio main screen from bottom.

Shortcut Menu



OMT26-2061

With vehicle powered on, slide down the audio screen to display shortcut menu screen and fault inquiry information.

Bluetooth, Power-off, EPB, Auto Hold, ESP OFF, HDC, AVM, HUD Adjustment, HUD, Rader Tone etc., can be set on shortcut menu screen.

Atmosphere Lamp



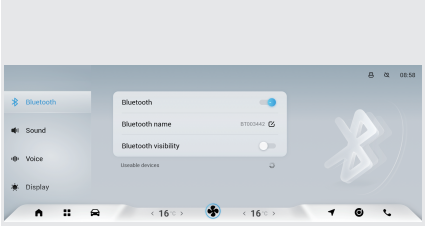
OMT26-2071

It sets ON/OFF of ambient light; Ambient light mode options: Monochromatic ambient/stepless color toning/ multiple color ambient/ driving mode/ speed mode/music mode.

Ambient light color adjustment: Set color of ambient light.

Zone control: Cowl/front/rear.

Local Setting

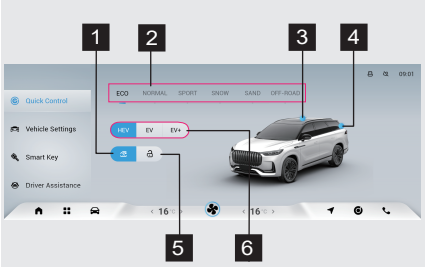


OMT26-2062

Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, Sound, Voice, Display, System, Device Manage can be set by local setting.

Vehicle Settings

Quick Control



OMT26-2063

1 Passenger side window OFF switch.

2 Driving mode switching.

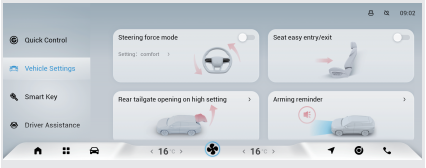
3 Click to enter the moon roof control screen, and click to open/close the moon roof.

4 Click to enter the back door control screen, click to open/close the back door.

5 Door unlock/lock switch.

6 Power mode switching.

Vehicle Settings



OMT26-2064

Steering force mode: ON/OFF; comfort/sport can be set when closing.

Seat easy entry/exit: ON/OFF.

Rear tailgate opening on high setting: Set the opening height of power back door.

Arming reminder: Set to light/lights and speakers.

Automatic lock: ON/OFF.

Main driver unlocked alone: ON/OFF.

Phone wireless charging: ON/OFF.

Phone forget reminder: ON/OFF.

Steering wheel button customizing: Custom settings.

Maintenance tips: ON/OFF.

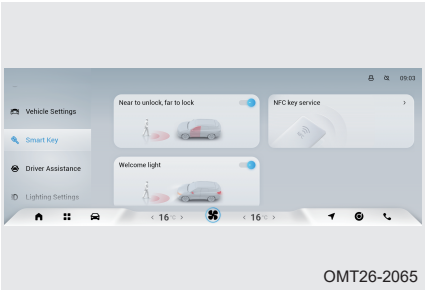
Maintenance mileage reset: Reset the maintenance mileage.

Tow mode: ON/OFF.

Wiper sensitivity: Set Low, Standard, High, Maximum.

Suspension mode linked driving mode: ON/OFF; COMFORT/SPORT can be set when closing.

Smart Key



OMT26-2065

Near to unlock,far to lock: ON/OFF.

NFC key service: Configure my key.

Welcome light: ON/OFF.

Driver Assistance



OMT26-2066

Integrated Cruise Assist Exit Warning: ON/OFF.

Vehicle departure warning: ON/OFF.

Overspeed warning: ON/OFF; Overspeed alarm speed limit value can be set when turned off: 30 km/h ~ 170 km/h.

Intelligent high beam assist: ON/OFF.

Intelligent avoidance assist: ON/OFF.

Front collision warning: ON/OFF; Set front collision warning sensitivity.

Automatic emergency braking assist: ON/OFF.

Lane departure warning: ON/OFF; Set lane departure alert sensitivity/ stray warning mode.

Lane departure intervention: ON/ OFF.

Emergency lane keeping assist: ON/ OFF.

Door opening warning: ON/OFF.

Blind spot detection assist: ON/OFF.

Rear collision warning: ON/OFF.

Rear cross traffic assist: ON/OFF.

Brake feel linked to driving mode: ON/OFF; Set the brake feel mode.

Brake pitch control: ON/OFF; Set the sensitivity.

Lighting Settings

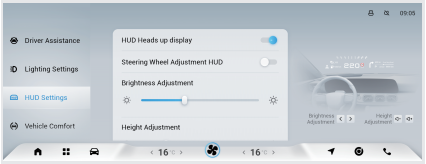


OMT26-2067

Headlight height adjustment: Slide to adjust the headlight leveling.

Headlight delay: ON/OFF.

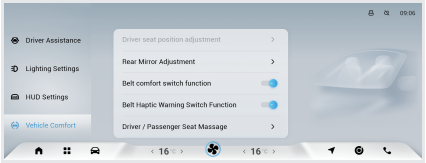
HUD Settings



OMT26-2068

HUD heads up display: ON/OFF; Set the steering wheel adjustment HUD on/off, brightness adjustment, height adjustment, snow mode on/off, HUD information display and default value restoring.

Vehicle Comfort



OMT26-2069

Driver seat position adjustment: Seat/rear view mirror memory position setting and recalling.

Rear mirror adjustment: Set the outside rear view mirror automatic folding, outside rear view mirror lens adjustment and rear view mirror automatic adjustment at reversing.

Belt comfort switch function: ON/OFF.

Belt Haptic Warning Switch Function: ON/OFF.

Driver / Passenger Seat Massage: Set the massage mode and massage strength for driver and front passenger seats.

READ
The setting items are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Audio Button



Voice recognition button "": Short press to wake up the voice recognition function; Long press to wake up the voice assistant (It is necessary to connect with phone).

Switch button "": Short press to cycle the driving information screens on the instrument cluster.

OK button "○": Short press to pause the playback of music/radio; Long press to reset the mileage in Trip B interface; Long press to switch to the full-screen or half-screen map on the navigation interface.

Volume + button "+": Short press to increase volume.

Volume - button "−": Short press to decrease volume.

Left switching button "": Short press to switch to previous track in music mode; Short press to switch to previous station in radio mode; Hang up while calling.

Right switching button "": Short press to switch to next track in music mode; Short press to switch to next station in radio mode; Answer the call while calling.

Voice Recognition Function

Voice recognition function can be enabled using the following methods when audio system is turned on:

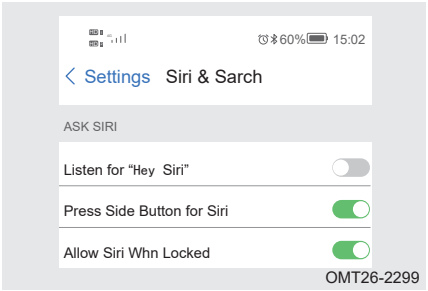
Method 1: Directly say the wake word to enable the voice recognition function.

Method 2: Short press the voice recognition button "" on steering wheel to enable the voice recognition function.

Phone-link

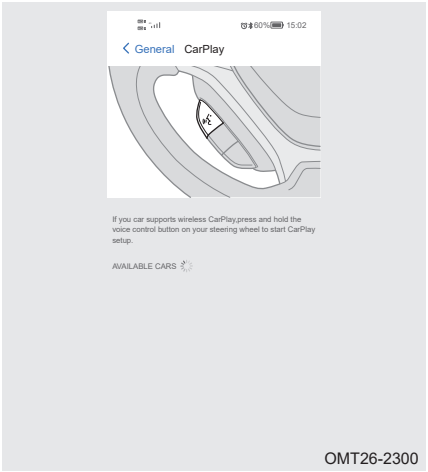
Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■ Connecting method



OMT26-2299

Step 1: Turn Listen for "Hey Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;



OMT26-2300

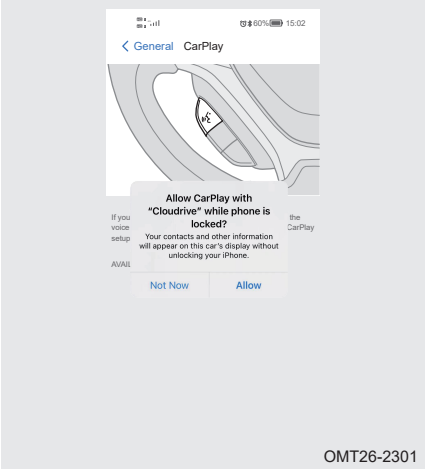
Step 2: Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;



OMT26-2200

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



OMT26-2301

Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;



OMT26-2302

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

■ Wireless carplay connection (If Equipped)

Step 1: Turn on hotspot on Apple phone, audio head unit WIFI interface is connected to phone hotspot.

Step 2: Connect Apple phone to Bluetooth on audio head unit.

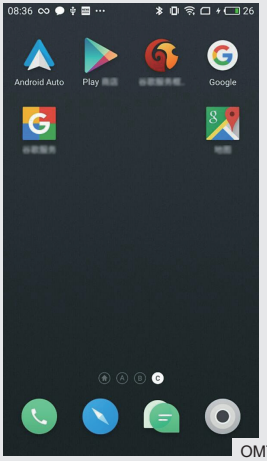
Step 3: Select Carplay according to interface that pops up on audio head unit or phone.

Step 4: Make pairing connection according to pop-up interface on phone; after connection is successfully, audio head unit displays carplay interface.

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

Android Auto (Android)

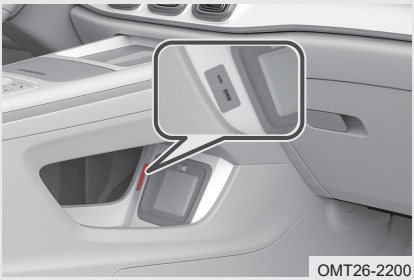
■ Connecting method



OMT26-2303

Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

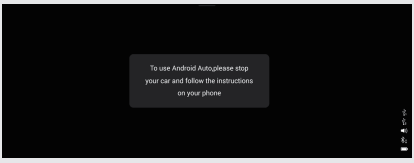
Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.



OMT26-2200

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



OMT26-2304

Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and apply the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the audio main screen to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

■ Wireless Android Auto connection (If Equipped)

Step 1: Turn on wireless Android Auto switch on the phone.

Step 2: Turn on Wi-Fi hotspot on head unit.

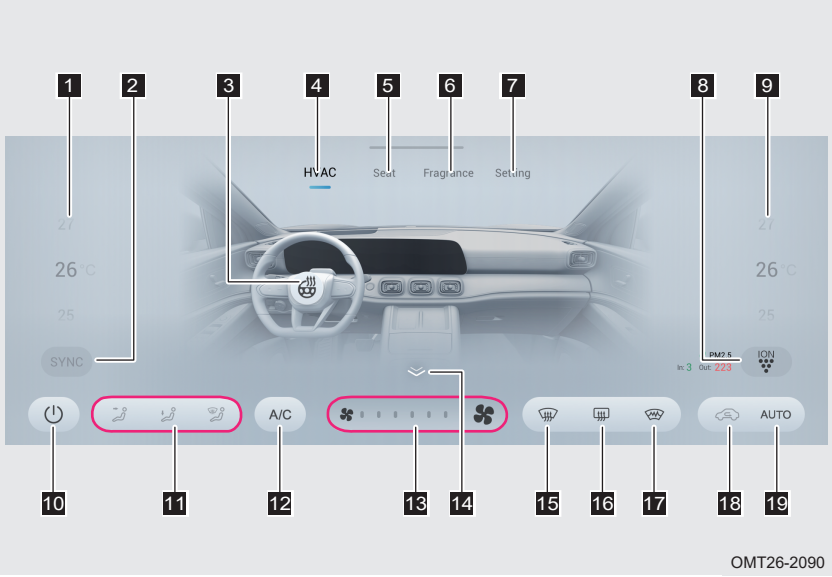
Step 3: Perform Bluetooth pairing between head unit and mobile phone.

Step 4: After Bluetooth connection is successful, a reminder to start wireless Android Auto will pop up on head unit, click "START" to complete wireless Android Auto connection.

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Automatic A/C

Front A/C



1 Driver temperature adjustment area	2 Dual mode button	3 Steering wheel heating button
4 Air conditioning screen display button	5 Seat screen display button	6 Fragrance screen display button
7 Setting screen display button	8 Air purification button	9 Front passenger temperature adjustment area
10 A/C switch button	11 Mode adjustment button	12 A/C button
13 Airflow volume adjustment area	14 Second row air conditioning screen display button	15 Defogging and defrosting button

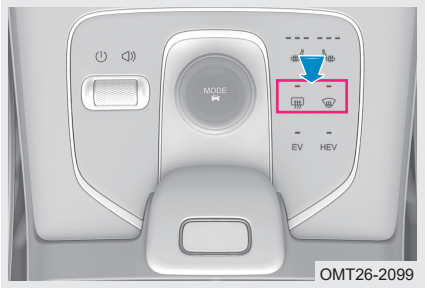
16 Rear defrosting button

17 Front windshield heating soft button (If Equipped)

18 Outside/recirculated air mode button

19 AUTO button

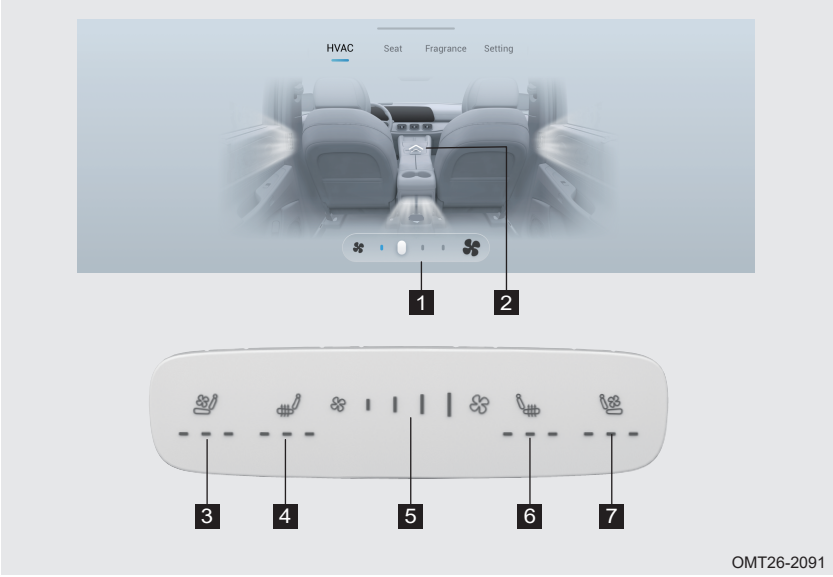
■ Front A/C panel



"⛆": Rear defrosting button.

" ": Defogging and defrosting button.

Second row air conditioning



1 Airflow volume adjustment area
2 Front air conditioning screen display button
3 Second row left seat ventilation button
4 Second row left seat heating button
5 Airflow volume adjustment area
6 Second row right seat heating button
7 Second row right seat ventilation button

Note: The airflow volume adjustment area can only be used to adjust the airflow volume and cannot be used to close the second row air conditioning outlet.

A/C Setting



OMT26-2093

With vehicle in READY, set the following functions in the A/C setting interface.

Automatic cabin ventilation: Before the user unlocks the car, the air in the car.

Automatic cabin cleaning: When detecting the risk of fogging in the car, the air conditioner will automatically turn on the defogging.

Custom A/C: Automatic A/C working state can be set to energy saving/ comfort/strong.

Custom air conditioner: Set to ECO/Comfort/Strong.

Automatic defogging: When detecting the risk of fogging in the car, the air conditioner starts automatically for self-cleaning.

Auxiliary heating function: In case of rapid heating, the auxiliary heating is automatically turned on.

Welcome function: When unlocked by remote control, the fragrance system automatically opens.

Refreshing function: When driving for a long time, automatically turn on the fragrance system for a short time.

Air Conditioning Operation

Temperature adjustment

Operate the temperature adjustment area to realize the adjustment of air conditioning temperature.

Airflow volume adjustment

Operate the airflow volume adjustment area to realize the airflow volume adjustment of air conditioning.

A/C switch button

Click A/C switch button to realize on/off of air conditioning system.

A/C button

Click A/C button to realize air conditioning cooling (air conditioning compressor starts to operate).

Dual mode button

Click the dual mode button to switch between single mode/dual mode (Air conditioning temperature of driver/front passenger can be adjusted separately).

READ
System will memorize the user's operation before head unit is turned off last time by default when turning on head unit.

Mode adjustment button

Click the mode adjustment button to realize mode adjustment. Window mode, face mode, and foot mode can be used separately or in combination, with a total of 7 modes: Window mode, face mode, foot mode, face and foot mode, foot and window mode, face and window mode, face, foot and window mode.

Window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from defroster outlet.

Foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet.

Face mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides.

Foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot and window outlets.

Face and foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and foot outlets on both sides.

Face and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and window outlets on both sides.

Face, foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face, foot and window outlets on both sides.

READ
If windshield glass become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. Click the defogging and defrosting button.

Outside/recirculated air mode button

The outside/recirculated air mode can be switched by clicking the outside/recirculated air mode button.

■ Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

1. In dusty environment.
2. To quickly cool the air in the vehicle.
3. To isolate other odors from outside.
4. To prevent outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.

AUTO button

Click AUTO button to turn on automatic mode.

■ System remains in automatic mode under following conditions:

1. Click AUTO button in automatic mode, and system does not exit the automatic mode.
2. In automatic mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the outside/recirculated function exits from the automatic control, and other functions are still in the automatic mode.
3. When operating A/C button or mode adjustment button or adjusting air volume in automatic mode, the operated function will exit the automatic mode, however, other functions will still in automatic mode.

Air purification button

Click air purification button to turn on (inside/outside PM2.5 value is displayed on audio head unit)/off the air purification function.

■ Air purification function turns off automatically under the following conditions:

1. Outside/recirculated air mode switches.
2. Airflow volume is adjusted to OFF.
3. Temperature is adjusted to LOW/HI.
4. Front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on.

READ

- The air purification function effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature.
- When the air purification function is turned on, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched, and air volume and mode may change.
- Turn on air purification function to ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic A/C in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.
- Air purification function is inoperative and the button is deactivated in following conditions:
  - Air purification function cannot be turned on when temperature conditions are not met.
  - Air purification function cannot be turned on when front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on.
  - When the wiper is turned on (in high speed or low speed), air purification function cannot be turned on after a few seconds.

Defogging and defrosting button

After vehicle is started, click defogging and defrosting button to turn on (adjust airflow to make most of it blow to front windshield and small amount of it blow to side window) /off front windshield defogging and defrosting function.

When the airflow volume is turned on, operate defogging and defrosting button to turn on outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

READ

- If the A/C fails to cool, the defogging effect will be affected. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, the defogging effect will be affected.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep in outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, the defogging effect will be affected.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, adjust mode and airflow volume to other proper position to improve comfort in vehicle.
- When defogging in winter, please keep in outside air mode. To adjust to the direction of partial heat, make air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the both sides of windows; when outside temperature is above 0℃, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.

⚠ CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged up quickly.
- Poor glass visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Rear defrosting button

After vehicle is started, click rear defrosting button to turn on/off rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function.

The rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function will turn off automatically after operating for about 20 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

- The outside rear view mirror defrosting function is not a standard configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function may not be turned on to ensure the normal starting of vehicle.
- Make sure that the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is turned off after defogging or defrosting the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror surface.

⚠ WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror when the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is operating or immediately after being turned off.

Air Conditioning Heating Operation

After vehicle is started, operate the temperature adjustment area and airflow volume adjustment area; It is recommended to adjust mode to foot mode and turn off refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns off, and air conditioning compressor stops operating) or set the temperature to 22 ℃ or higher, click the AUTO button, and air conditioning will automatically operate and heat to a comfortable temperature.

Air Conditioning Cooling Operation

After vehicle is started, click AUTO button and A/C automatically controls operation of mode, airflow volume, outside/recirculated air mode and refrigeration/heating system. In order to adapt to the different people's physique, the setting temperature can be fluctuated up and down at 22℃, which can obtain the best cooling/heating effect.

■ For the best cooling effect, please keep the surface of A/C filter clean without obvious blockage, then operate as follows:

Step 1: Adjust air volume to the maximum level;

Step 2: Adjust temperature to Max Cool;

Step 3: Adjust outside/recirculated air mode to recirculated air mode;

Step 4: Adjust to face mode;

Step 5: Turn on the refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns on, and air conditioning compressor starts operating).

READ

- Dirt and blockage in the surface of air conditioning condenser may cause poor cooling effect, please keep condenser clean.
- When air cools down quickly in hot and humid conditions, the fog may be seen from outlet, which is a normal physical phenomenon.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, the A/C compressor may not be started even if indicator comes on after operating A/C button.
- After the A/C system cooling operation, some water may drip from the air conditioning drain pipe and form a pool under vehicle, which is normal.
- After temperature in vehicle decreases to a lower temperature, compressor will turn off automatically to reduce the influence on power of power system and fuel consumption, this is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease over time, if you feel that the refrigeration effect of air conditioning becomes poor, please go to a authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- It is recommended to turn on air conditioning refrigeration system for 5 minutes or more every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germs.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off automatically and you feel it is lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.
- If air conditioning is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning indicator. If engine overheats, it is recommended to drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, turn off A/C and let vehicle idle for several minutes, then check if high coolant temperature warning indicator goes off. If not, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- To extend service life of air conditioning system, do not use the air conditioning for a long time with low speed when performing air conditioning cooling.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, as the high pressure refrigerant in air conditioning system is harmful to human. It is necessary to go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at authorized service station, otherwise, A/C system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot weather, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or even death, especially for infants and very young children.

Intelligent Mode

Quick heating

All windows are closed, seat heating (If Equipped) is turned on, steering wheel heating (If Equipped) is turned on, outside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow and highest temperature, and foot mode is turned on; Wait until the inside temperature reaches the comfortable temperature or manually click this button to automatically turn off the quick heating.

Quick cooling

All windows are closed, seat ventilation (If Equipped) is turned on, inside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow and lowest temperature, and face mode is turned on; Wait until the inside temperature reaches the comfortable temperature or manually click this button to automatically turn off the quick cooling.

Intelligent deodorization

Outside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow.

Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box

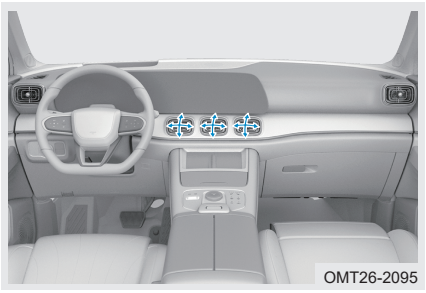


Place the required items (such as canned drinks) in armrest box, adjust A/C to face or face/foot mode and perform A/C refrigeration/warming operation, then turn the internal damper of the armrest box to refrigerate/warm the required items.

⚠ WARNING
Armrest box cannot be closed if the items is oversize. The opened armrest box may hinder the movement of driver's arm, be careful not to be injured.

Air Outlets Airflow Control

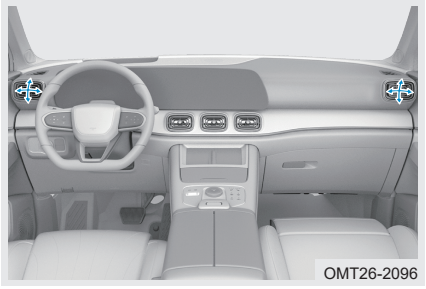
Front outlets


OMT26-2095

Move center outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

If it is necessary to close the air conditioning outlet, turn the air outlet knob clockwise to close it, and turn the air outlet knob counterclockwise to open it.

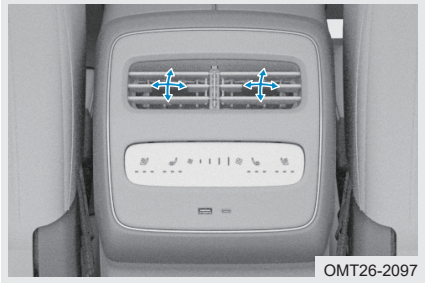
Front side outlets


OMT26-2096

Move left/right side outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

If it is necessary to close the air conditioning outlet, turn the air outlet knob clockwise to close it, and turn the air outlet knob counterclockwise to open it.

Second row outlets


OMT26-2097

Move the second row outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Second row side outlets (If Equipped)

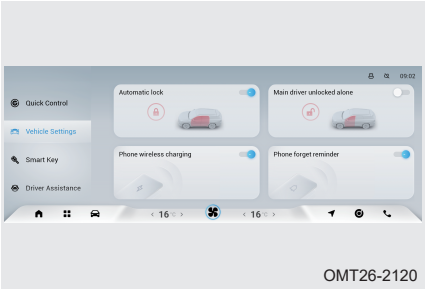

OMT26-2098

Move the second row outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow or open/close the air conditioning outlet.

3-7. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped)

Wireless charging uses electromagnetic induction technology conveniently and safely to allow for a better experience while driving.



OMT26-2120

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Wireless Charging through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.

Usage methods


OMT26-2121

While vehicle power is turned to ON mode, when the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, the audio head unit displays " "; the audio head unit displays " " after charging is completed.

Note: Heat dissipation holes are set underneath the wireless charging to avoid falling into foreign matters or entering liquids.

■ In the following conditions, the wireless charging may not work properly:

1. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of phone is more than 6 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.

2. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal or NFC card key (if equipped) (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio head unit displays " ".
3. When the surface temperature of wireless charging sensing area is more than 65° C due to sun exposure, the wireless charging module will trigger self-protection and the mobile phone cannot be charged.

⚠ CAUTION

- Wireless charging function supports fast charging for some phones (50W).
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of the mobile phone slot. If you accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply during driving, the mobile phone will shake, which may affect the charging efficiency and stability.
- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, there will be a temporary charging shielding, so that vehicle may identify the smart key. At the same time, do not place metal objects such as the smart key on the wireless charging tray.
- If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and damage may be caused if using frequently (such as function failure, poor interface contact, metal foreign object recognition failure).
- When phone wireless charging function is used, do not place the NFC card key (if equipped) in the phone charging area.

Phone forget reminder function (if equipped)



OMT26-2122

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Forgetting Reminder through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.

With vehicle power turned to OFF mode, if you open the driver door with the mobile phone left in wireless charging sensing area, it will sound an alarm: "Smart device is still in vehicle".

3-8. FOTA Upgrade

FOTA Upgrade (If Equipped)

Upgrade conditions

1. Downloading the upgrade package requires network (4G or WiFi).
2. Park the vehicle in a safe place and apply parking brake to ensure the safety of vehicle in the process of upgrade.

3. It is recommended that you do not operate the audio head unit in the process of upgrade and keep the OTA upgrade screen on the top.

READ
The vehicle with an activated card can use 4G network or WiFi to download the installation package, and the vehicle without an activated card needs to connect WiFi in the Audio System - Local Setting.

Upgraded controller and time

OTA upgrade includes the following controllers. The upgrade time of single controller is tens of minutes. The specific upgrade time is subject to the upgrade of real vehicle. Please make sure that there is sufficient time before the upgrade, otherwise the upgrade may fail.

Audio and Entertainment Head Unit (DMC)	Estimated upgrade time: 500 seconds
Remote Control Module (TBOX)	Estimated upgrade time: 310 seconds
Seat Control Module (SCU)	Estimated upgrade time: 102 minutes
Seat Heating Controller (SHU)	Estimated upgrade time: 69 minutes
Automatic A/C Module (CLM)	Estimated upgrade time: 76 seconds
Charging and Discharging Distribution Unit (CDU)	Estimated upgrade time: 145 seconds
Front Camera Module (FCM)	Estimated upgrade time: 440 seconds
Rear Left Corner Radar/Rear Right Corner Radar (RLCR/RRCR)	Estimated upgrade time: 240 seconds
Battery Management System (BMS)	Estimated upgrade time: 390 seconds
Vehicle Control Module (BDM)	Estimated upgrade time: 320 seconds
Phone Wireless Charging Module (CWC)	Estimated upgrade time: 83 seconds

Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade



OMT26-2130

Method 1: The vehicle is powered on and gear position is in P, if there is a new upgrade version, the system automatically pop up the upgrade prompt box. Click to check and enter the vehicle upgrade screen.

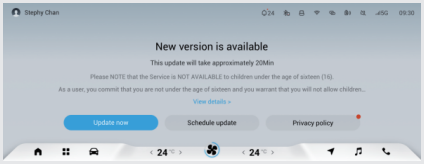


OMT26-2131

Method 2: Click Vehicle Upgrade through Audio System - My Vehicle to enter the vehicle upgrade screen.

Operation for Upgrade Now

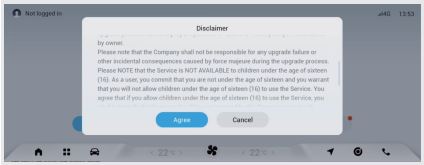
Upgrade prompt



OMT26-2132

After entering the vehicle upgrade screen, the update content will be displayed. Click Upgrade Now.

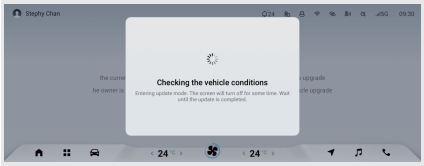
Disclaimer



OMT26-2133

Click Upgrade now to enter disclaimer screen, which informs the owner of upgrade terms and statements, then click Agree.

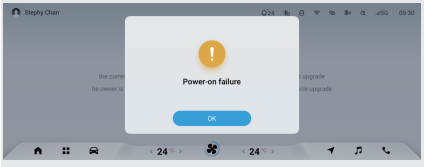
Checking the vehicle conditions



OMT26-2134

Click and agree with the disclaimer, the pop-up box on the screen will prompt "Checking the vehicle conditions". On the screen, the automatic power-off is performed. After a black screen is displayed for a few seconds with automatic power-off, the vehicle is automatically powered on. The pop-up box on the screen will prompt the user "The vehicle is about to enter the ON gear upgrade".

Upgrade mode



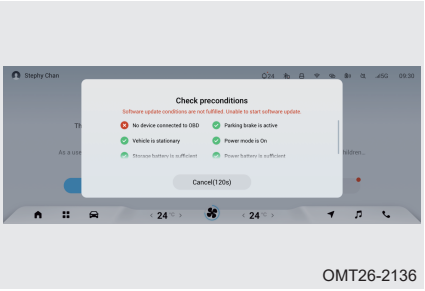
OMT26-2135

If the vehicle power-on fails, the pop-up box on the screen will prompt power-on failure. Follow the prompts to operate.

If the vehicle is automatically and successfully powered on, it will enter upgrade mode. If you fail to enter the upgrade mode, please operate according to the prompt.

⚠ CAUTION
In the upgrade mode, do not depress brake pedal, wiper washing function, interior light control, exterior light control, air conditioning control, instrument cluster screen and other functions are disabled.

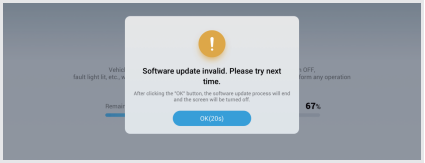
Detecting upgrade preconditions



OMT26-2136

After entering the upgrade mode successfully, it will enter upgrade precondition detection screen, and automatically enter the next step after meeting the vehicle condition conditions required by the upgrade; If it is detected that the vehicle does not meet the upgrade preconditions, a prompt window that conditions are not met will pop out, please operate according to the prompt.

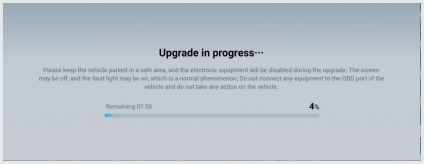
Task effectiveness test



OMT26-2137

Before starting the upgrade, ask the OTA server whether the upgrade task of this time has failed. If it fails, report the task failure status and prompt that the upgrade task is invalid. Please operate according to the prompt. If successful, it will enter the upgrade installation.

Upgrade installation



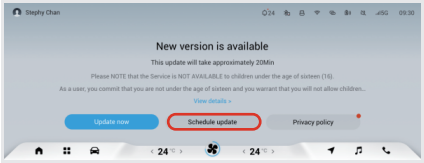
OMT26-2138

After entering the upgrade mode successfully, enter the screen of starting upgrade and wait for the end of upgrade.

⚠ CAUTION
Meter and multi-media may be restarted after upgrading, which is normal.

Appointment Upgrade Operation

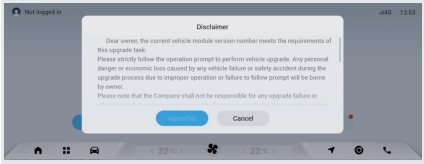
Upgrade prompt



OMT26-2139

After entering the vehicle upgrade screen, the update content will be displayed. Click "Schedule update".

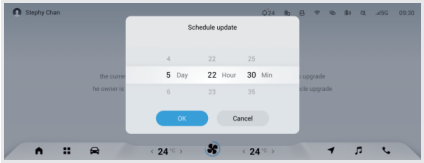
Disclaimer



OMT26-2140

Click "Schedule update" to enter disclaimer screen, which informs the owner of upgrade terms and statements, then click Agree.

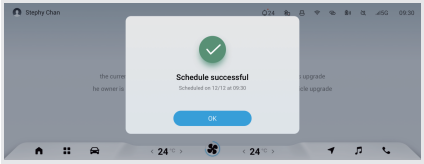
Setting appointment time



OMT26-2141

After agreeing the disclaimer, it enters the appointment time setting screen. After the time is set, click OK. After the appointment time is set successfully, it will prompt that the appointment is successful.

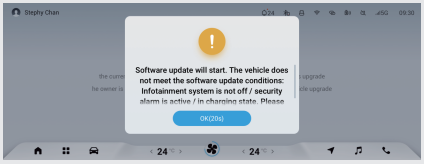
Note: The appointment upgrade supports an appointment time setting within 24 hour.



OMT26-2142

Click OK to return to the main screen and the appointment time can be seen. After the appointment time is set and the appointment is successful, please power off the vehicle, people leave the vehicle and four doors are locked, and the vehicle is in sleep state.

Detecting upgrade preconditions



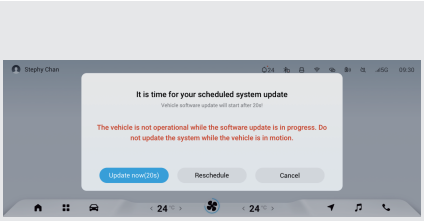
OMT26-2143

After the appointment time is reached, the vehicle is woken up and upgrade precondition detection is carried out.

The vehicle is powered off and vehicle is in arming mode, it will automatically enter the upgrade mode. If the preconditions for upgrade are not met, it will exit the upgrade process. The next time the vehicle is started, the upgrade will be prompted again.

The vehicle is not powered off or vehicle is not in arming mode. Exit the appointment upgrade. Please operate according to the prompt.

Upgrade mode



OMT26-2144

After the appointment time is reached and the vehicle status meets the upgrade conditions, the vehicle enters the upgrade mode, and the user cannot drive and use the vehicle at this time.

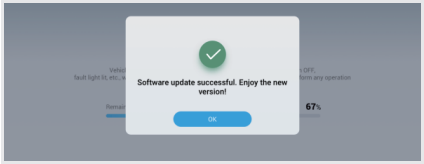
Upgrade installation

After upgrade preconditions are detected and met, the automatic upgrade will be performed. The vehicle cannot be used during the upgrade process.

Upgrade Result Prompt

After the upgrade is completed, the following upgrade results will pop up after the vehicle is powered on.

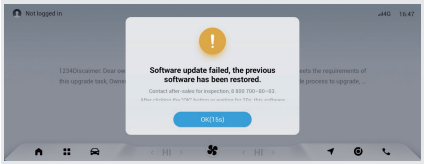
Upgrade succeeded



OMT26-2145

When all controllers are successfully upgraded, a message is displayed indicating that the upgrade is successful, exit the upgrade mode. Click OK button or after 20 s, the vehicle is powered off, it will prompt that the upgrade is completed, the screen is turned off.

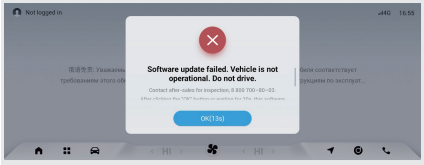
Upgrade not completed



OMT26-2146

When a controller fails to upgrade and the rollback is successful, it will prompt that the upgrade is not completed, exit the upgrade mode. Click OK button or after 20 s, the vehicle is powered off, it will prompt that the upgrade is completed, the screen is turned off.

Upgrade failed



OMT26-2147

When a controller fails to upgrade and the rollback fails, it will prompt that the upgrade is failed, exit the upgrade mode. Click OK button or after 20 s, the vehicle is powered off, it will prompt that the upgrade is completed, the screen is turned off.

Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading

When OTA upgrade is successful and remote power-off fails, it will prompt "-Upgrade is successful, power-off fails". Operate according to the prompt. Click OK to return to the vehicle upgrade screen. Just restart the vehicle.

When OTA upgrade is completed and upgrade mode exiting fails, wait for 2 hours to automatically exit OTA mode in normal conditions. If it is still impossible to exit upgrade mode after 2 hours, please contact authorized service station.

When upgrade mode exits successfully, 20 s countdown pop-up displays before power off, do not shift the gear. Otherwise, power-off failure or power-off success emergency stop may occur.

If other abnormal problems occur in OTA upgrade, it is recommended to power off the vehicle, make the person and key leave the vehicle, lock the four doors and wait 15 minutes, then restart the vehicle and try to operate OTA upgrade again; If the problem is still not resolved or OTA upgrade fails, please contact authorized service station.

Network Security Notification

Network security service update or termination notification

Our company has provided network security support services for the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and update it regularly or irregularly or terminate this service.

When the service changes, our company will inform you through website announcement, email, on-board system, SMS, voice call, etc.

Email, SMS and voice call will be notified or sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in your account registration information.

Network security notification for resale or disposal

Before you resell or dispose the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

Be careful to avoid that the personal information of the vehicle terminal is disclosed to third party due to improper operation.

3-9. Remote Control System

Remote Control System (If Equipped)

User can remotely view the vehicle status (including lock status, engine status, window status, moon roof status, back door status, tire temperature and pressure, remaining fuel, etc.) on their mobile phone APP, and remotely control the vehicle to improve driving efficiency, monitoring and protection of the vehicle.

READ
For details about activation and usage of vehicle control function, refer to electronic manual in mobile APP, or contact authorized service station.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Due to product version upgrade or other reasons, the information company will update or revise the contents herein from time to time without prior notice. Please make sure that you refer to the latest version before using the product.

Quick access to management

Customize your vehicle control commands

After activating the car, on the Garage page you will be able to control the car using the quick access toolbar, as well as view various vehicle indicators. The list of commands displayed in this panel can be configured in the "Telematics Settings" section on the detailed vehicle management page.

When using commands from the Quick Access toolbar, it is important to consider several points:

- To avoid unauthorized access to driving, every 10 minutes you will be prompted for the access code that was previously set when activating telematics.
- To execute commands, you must hold down the call button for three seconds until the button's progress is complete and you feel a vibration-a sign that the command has been completed. You will also see a notification about the status of the sent command.

Vehicle Metrics and Indicators

On the page of your car in the Garage, you can see the following indicators:

- Vehicle control status based on the selected quick control buttons: For example, whether the car's central locking system, windows, trunk, or sunroof are open or closed.
- Vehicle level/charge, as well as charging status (charging status: currently charging).
- Available number of kilometers based on your level/charge.
- Vehicle interior temperature and air conditioner status (off/on).
- Tire indicators - pressure level in kPa, as well as tire temperature. If the indicators deviate from the norm, the tire indicators will be highlighted in red.

Detailed Management Page

By clicking on the "Go to Telematics" button on a separate car management page, you will see a dynamic model of the car that displays the current status of all its doors, trunk and sunroof. If you need to make sure that the doors, sunroof, or trunk are closed, just go to this page and check the condition of your vehicle.

Main control

In this section, you can track the position of the doors, as well as open and close the trunk, sunroof, and windows.

The following positions are supported for windows and sunroof:

- Open it in full.
- Tilt for sunroof and ventilation for windows.
- To close.

If the command buttons have an active status and are highlighted, it means that the commands are active (i.e. these elements are open)

Climate Control

In this section, you can control the temperature of your car.

To change the temperature settings, you need to:

- Select commands by clicking on the interior heating/ventilation buttons (-seats, air conditioning, heated steering wheel, etc.) available in your car configuration
- Set the temperature of the air conditioner and the operating time of the cooling/heating system.
- Commands will work instantly. Wait for the status of the command execution in the toast system.

In addition, a set of commands is provided for heating or cooling the machine by default. Just click on the "All heating systems " or "All cooling systems " and then click on the "Apply" button.

If you decide to reset all previously applied temperature settings , click on the “Reset All” button and then hold down the "Apply" button for 3 seconds.

Search for a car on the map

Go to the "Find a car" section to view the car's location on the map. Use a sound and light signal to search on the spot

The map shows the location of your car, as well as your current location. When you use the "Beep and Light Signals" command, your vehicle will beep and turn on its headlights, which will help you find it.

For your convenience, you can search for places on the map, starting from gas stations and ending with the control zones that you have created. Just drag the search modal window to your location and select a category of places: parking lots, charging stations, gas stations, services, and places where car products are sold. When you find the desired location on the map, send it to the car so that the car can plot a route between the current location and the selected location in the mobile app. The search history displays all the requested addresses.

3-10. Storage Space

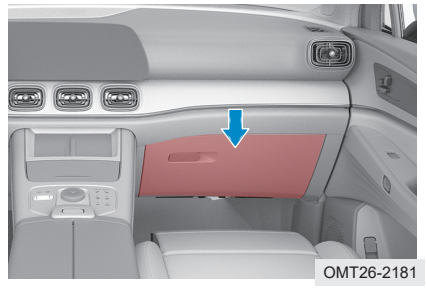
Storage Space

Door storage boxes


OMT26-2180

Storage boxes on front and the second row doors can be used for storing maps, cups and others items.

Glove box


OMT26-2181

Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Before driving, make sure that the glove box is closed in place. Otherwise in case of emergency braking or emergency steering, it may cause accidents and serious injury or even death.

Armrest box


OMT26-2182

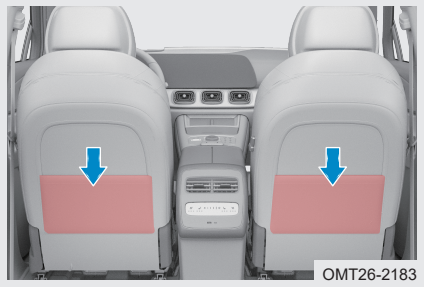
Armrest box is used to store maps, instructions and other items.

For vehicle equipped with armrest box light, the corresponding armrest box light will come on when opening the armrest box .

⚠ WARNING

- Adults or children are not allowed to sit on armrest box.
- Armrest box must be closed when the vehicle is running, and the opening armrest box may hinder the driver's arm movement to prevent injury.

Seat storage bag


OMT26-2183

Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

Luggage compartment


OMT26-2184

To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger is in rear seats.

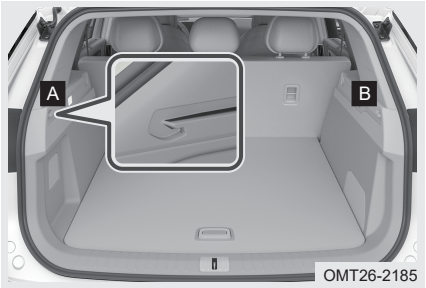
■ When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

1. Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
2. For better fuel economy, do not stow unneeded items.
3. Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the back door from closing properly.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they may be seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.

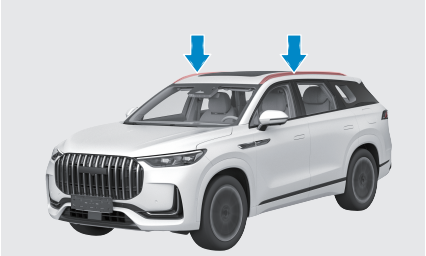
■ Luggage curtain (if equipped)



OMT26-2185

Pull the luggage curtain to the slots of point A and point B to secure it, and confirm if it is secured properly.

Carrier


OMT26-2186

Roof carrier is used for loading cargo, with a load of 70 - 90 kg. Be sure that the total weight of the loading cargo on the carrier or loading tool (such as luggage compartment, cross rod) does not exceed 70 - 90 kg.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never allow the loaded long or wide cargoes to exceed the overall length or width of the vehicle.
- Overweight will cause carrier, moon roof glass, body roof and other components to be damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not under the warranty.
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely attached to the roof carrier. Blankets or other protection items can be placed between the cargo and the roof. Be careful not to scratch the roof surface.

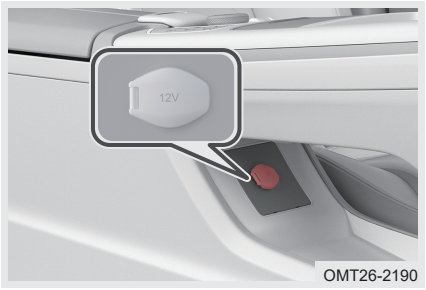
⚠ WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Loading cargo on carrier will raise the vehicle center of gravity. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate vehicle.

3-11. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Power Outlet

Front power outlet



Front backup power supply is located on the front end of auxiliary fascia console.

Backup power supply can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

Rear power outlet (if equipped)

Rear power outlet is located on the left of luggage compartment.

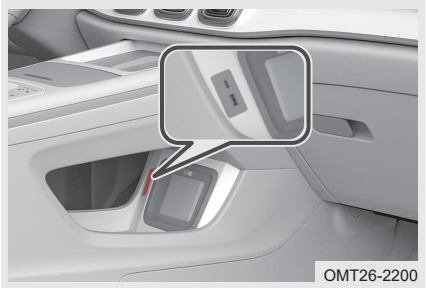
Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- To prevent the battery from depleting, do not use backup power supply longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the backup power supply other than an appropriate plug. Failure to do so may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

3-12. USB Port

Front USB Port

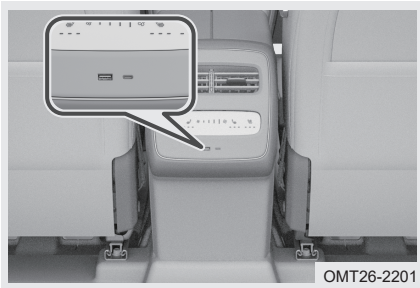


Front USB port is located on the front end of auxiliary fascia console.

Type-A port: It can be used for reading U disc, phone connect and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Rear USB Port


OMT26-2201

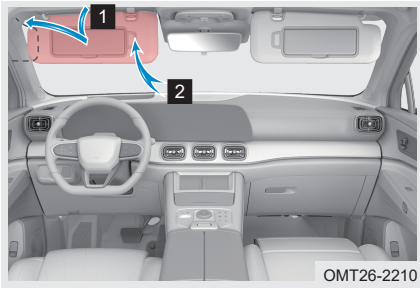
Rear USB port is located under the rear air outlet of center armrest box.

Type-A port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port (If Equipped): It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

3-13. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors



OMT26-2210

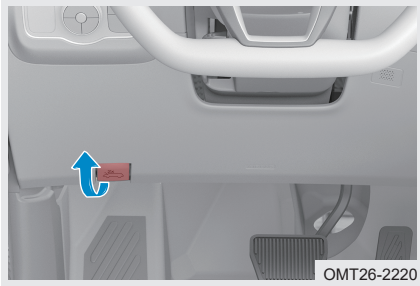
Flip the sun visor down and open the vanity mirror cover panel to use the vanity mirror, and the corresponding vanity mirror light comes on.

1 Flip the sun visor down.

2 Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade the sidelight.

3-14. Hood

Opening/Closing Hood


OMT26-2220

Step 1: The hood will spring up slightly when the hood release lever is pulled twice;

Step 2: Lift the hood up and lift and support the hood under action of the air spring;

Step 3: Lower the hood and close it until the latch is locked;

Step 4: After closing the hood, lift the hood lightly to check that hood is fully closed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before closing the hood, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the engine compartment.
- When closing the hood, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that hood is closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may be caused.

3-15. Back Door

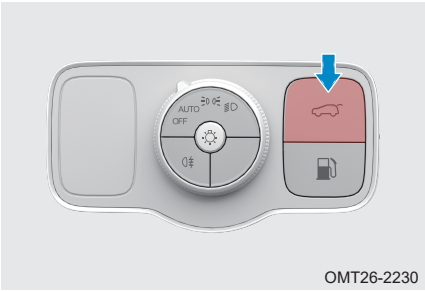
Power Back Door

For your convenience, power back door can be opened/closed in various ways (such as using driver side switch, back door exterior switch, back door interior switch, smart key remote control, smart key sensing, voice, remote open/close back door (If Equipped)), the height adjustment function can also be achieved, let you fully feel the convenience of power back door.

Smart key remote control

When vehicle is powered off, long press back door opener button on smart key, power back door will be open/closed.

Driver door switch

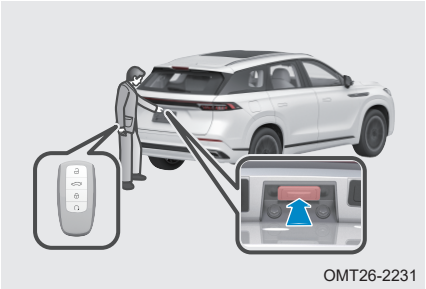


OMT26-2230

With central lock unlocked, long press " " button, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

When the power back door is moving, press " " button to suspend the action.

Back door exterior switch


OMT26-2231

Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle and press exterior switch on the back door, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person and press back door exterior switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

READ

When the central lock is locked, please unlock the central lock first, and then open it with back door exterior switch.

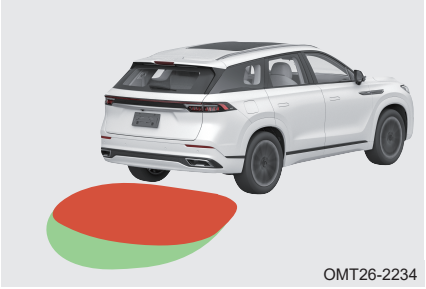
Back door interior switch


OMT26-2232

With the power back door open, press " " button to close the power back door.

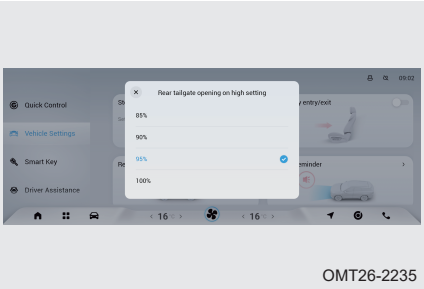
When the power back door is moving, press " " button to suspend the action.

Smart key sensing


OMT26-2234

While vehicle is powered off or vehicle is started remotely, close the four doors, approach to the rear of vehicle (red area) while carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key, after turn signal lights come on, take a step back (-green area), power back door opens.

Back door opening height



OMT26-2235

The vehicle is in READY status, set the Back Door Opening Height through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings.



OMT26-2236

After the power back door is opened, adjust it to your desire height; long press " " button until the vehicle gives a light prompt, and the power back door opening height is set successfully.

READ

- For details about remote back door control, refer to "Remote Control System" section.
- If the back door opening height is too low or too high, the back door opening height cannot be set.
- Smart key sensing back door open function is turned off after 3 days since vehicle is locked, restarting the vehicle will resume the function.
- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc. failure to do so may cause the power back door being unable to sense opening/closing.
- When any switch (such as power back door switch, power back door button, back door open button) is activated during the movement of the power back door, the back door will stop moving.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the back door is abnormal, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the power back door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- Before driving, make sure that the back door is closed properly, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- Before opening the power back door, be sure to note that there should be nothing in the opening range, which could result in scratching the back door.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.
- When the power back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, as this may cause damage to related parts.
- When closing power back door by hand, please operate gently. Never operate with brute force, failure to do so may cause damage to motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the power back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- If the battery (12 V) cable is disconnected and reconnected, the power back door needs to be manually closed to locked position at a constant speed, and then press the power back door switch to open/close the power back door normally.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, accidents and damage to related parts may be caused.

Power back door jam protection function

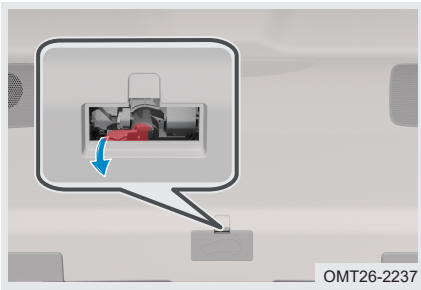
Positive jam protection: When power back door is opening, if it encounters resistance (such as wall, obstacle), the back door positive jam protection works to avoid vehicle damage.

Reverse jam protection: When power back door is closing, if it encounters resistance (such as children, luggage), the back door reverse jam protection works to avoid child injury and vehicle damage.

⚠ WARNING

Although the power back door is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

Back Door Emergency Opening


OMT26-2237

Back door cannot be opened when battery (12 V) is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door stand-by device switch (stop the vehicle as safely as possible if condition permits).

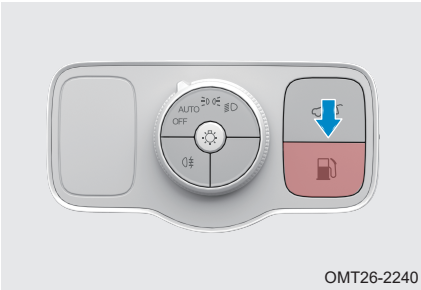
Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open stand-by device cover;

Step 3: Press down the stand-by device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

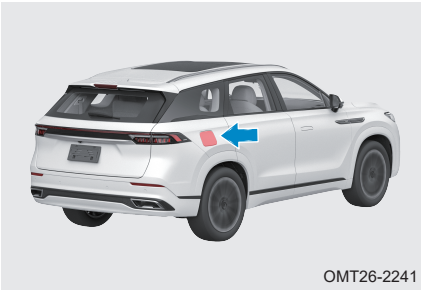
3-16. Fuel Tank Cap

Electric Fuel Tank Cap

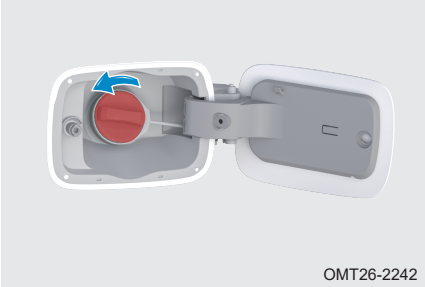


OMT26-2240

Step 1: Switch vehicle to power off state, long press " " button and instrument cluster displays "It is ready to refuel, please refuel" message, and fuel tank cap unlocks after pressure relief is completed;


OMT26-2241

Step 2: After fuel tank cap is unlocked, push fuel tank cap, it will pop up;


OMT26-2242

Step 3: Turn the fuel filler door counterclockwise;

Step 4: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard.

Step 5: Turn fuel tank cap to correct position and press to close it.

READ

- After the fuel tank cap is closed, it will be locked again within 30 seconds.
- After fuel tank cap unlocks, if it is not opened within 10 minutes, the cap will lock again.
- Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, the sprayed fuel should be collected and disposed by a professional.

CAUTION

- Never add diesel to fuel tank.
- After fuel filler cap is tightened firmly, loose your hand and the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction. This is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pry the cap.
- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is opened, this is normal.
- When freezing at low temperature, after the vehicle arming is deactivated, tap fuel tank cap and then fuel tank cap opens. It is normal phenomenon.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- During driving, if fuel tank cap is not closed, drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, then close the cap again.
- If the vehicle arming is not deactivated, never push fuel tank cap with a strong force as this may cause damage related components of fuel tank cap.

⚠ WARNING

- If the fuel filler door is not tightened in place, it may cause the engine malfunction light comes on.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- Before refueling, switch vehicle to power off state and close all doors and windows.
- Make sure that the fuel filler door is tightened securely, to prevent accident caused by fuel spillage.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off! Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow from the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.
- Do not remove the fuel filler door quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel tank cap, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling, because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Because gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking and phone calls are prohibited in the gas station area, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.

4-1. Before Driving Vehicle

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving..... 146

Vehicle Power-on 146

Vehicle Power-off 148

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)..... 149

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)..... 150

Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)..... 152

Foot Brake 154

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission 155

Column Shift Switch 156

Shift Paddle (If Equipped) 157

4-5. Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD) 159

Driving Mode 159

4-6. Airbag

Airbag 165

4-1. Before Driving Vehicle

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving

Step 1: Check surroundings of vehicle before getting in;

Step 2: Adjust seat angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;

Step 3: Adjust angles of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;

Step 4: Fasten the seat belts;

Step 5: Confirm that the parking brake is applied and gear position is in P;

Step 6: With vehicle powered on, check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on meter are normal; if they are abnormal, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately;

Step 7: Carry smart key on your person or put it in vehicle, so that it can be detected normally; Depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Vehicle Power-on

Normal power-on

The driver performs door unlocking operation, opens the driver door, and the vehicle is automatically powered on.

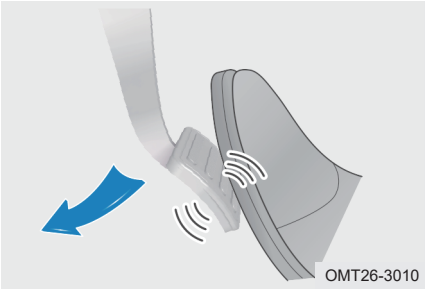
READ

The vehicle is equipped with an alcohol lock, which needs to be installed at after-sales authorized service station.

CAUTION

After vehicle is powered on, do not use electrical appliances of vehicle for a long period of time. When low battery is prompted, charge in time or use engine to charge by starting vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may not start due to power battery loss. When vehicle fails to start due to serious loss of power battery, it can be restarted by connecting the charging gun for charging. If it still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

Normal starting

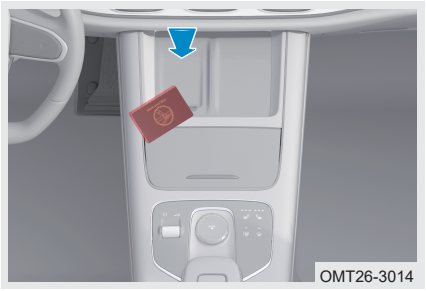


With vehicle powered on, carry the smart key on your person and enter the vehicle, depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and " READY " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

READ

When vehicle is in READY state, the motor is silent, make sure that the shift lever is shifted to P before leaving or locking vehicle.

Starting vehicle by NFC card key (if equipped)



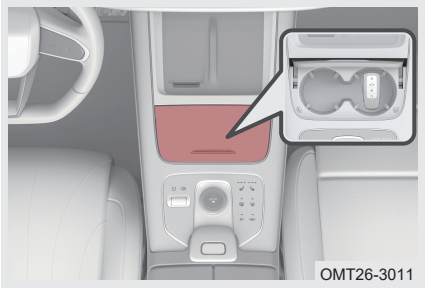
After unlocking the vehicle by NFC card key, user depresses brake pedal within 3 minutes to start the vehicle. After 3 minutes, place NFC card key in wireless charging sensing area inside the vehicle and then the vehicle can be started.

CAUTION

- Always keep card in wireless charging sensing area to get the best experience when using NFC card key.
- When using phone wireless charging function, check if there is NFC card key or other NFC cards (entrance card/transportation card/bank card, etc.) placed in the sensing area, if so, take away card to avoid affecting phone charging function.

Starting in emergency

When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, the vehicle cannot be started. Start according to following steps:


OMT26-3011

Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console storage box with front side facing up (as shown in figure), depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ CAUTION

- Avoid engine idling for a long time as much as possible.
- Do not run cold engine at high speed or under high load (It is normal that the engine runs at high speed when the power battery of vehicle is depleted and vehicle is started in Sport mode).

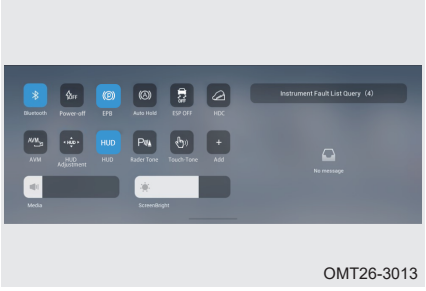
Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off


OMT26-3012

Method 1: With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, perform vehicle locking operation, and the vehicle is powered off.

Method 2: With vehicle in READY state, driver door open, driver seat not occupied, gear position in P, turn the vehicle to power-on state, close the four doors, and perform vehicle locking operation, the vehicle is powered off.



OMT26-3013

Method 3: With vehicle powered on or in READY state, gear position in P, click "OFF" button on quick menu, the vehicle is powered off. The next time the driver uses vehicle, it is not possible to automatically power on the vehicle, directly depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for 90 minutes.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> After the vehicle is stopped, the driver should always make the gear position in the P position through the P button before getting off, and then open the door and get off after determining the completion of the parking to prevent the vehicle from accidentally sliding.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
> - It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric power steering system uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by engine.

Electric power steering system self-learning

After the vehicle battery (12 V) is powered off and reconnecting or starting vehicle, due to the initialization of electric steering system angle, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position to complete the angle reset, and the "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster turns off.

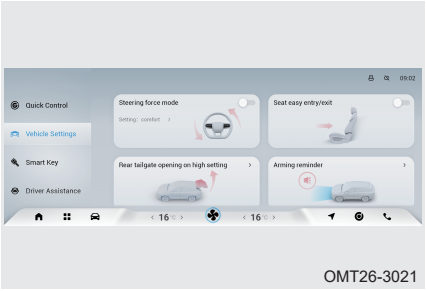
> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> - Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in EPS system.
> - It is forbidden to turn the steering wheel left and right frequently and quickly at idle speed to prevent the system from overheating. If the system is overheating, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop turning the steering wheel and switch vehicle to OFF state until the system cools down.

Electric power steering system indicator

When there is a fault, "" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> After EPS system is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Steering power mode



OMT26-3021

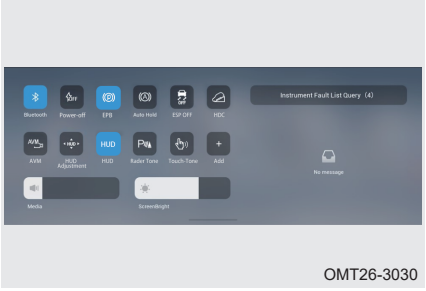
With vehicle in READY state, turn on steering force mode associated with driving mode through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Vehicle Settings; It can be set to comfort/ sport separately after turning off. Compared to comfort mode, steering force of sport mode is reduced and the hand feels calm.

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)

EPB system is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional hand-brake.

Usage methods



OMT26-3030

Applying parking brake manually

When the vehicle is powered on, driver seat belt is fastened and the vehicle is in stationary status, click "" button on quick menu, and "" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that EPB function has been turned on.

EPB function is automatically applied when the vehicle is powered off or the shift lever is shifted to P.

Releasing parking brake manually

When the vehicle is powered on, depress the brake pedal, click "Ⓟ" button on quick menu, and "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off, indicating that parking brake function has been released.

Releasing parking brake automatically

With vehicle stopped on level ground, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift lever is shifted from P to D or R, the EPB is released automatically, and "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

With vehicle stopped on a slope, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift lever is shifted from P to D or R, depress accelerator pedal deeply, and parking brake can be released automatically only when driving force is greater than slipping force.

READ

When towing vehicle, it is necessary to release parking brake, and the shift lever needs to be shifted into N.

⚠ CAUTION

- EPB and AUTO HOLD cannot be used when vehicle battery (12 V) is depleted. Jumper cables can be used to start.
- While depressing brake pedal for releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, just depress the brake tightly.
- When performing automatic releasing of electric parking brake, fasten the driver's seat belt and close the driver door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake cannot be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake and is normal.
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period of time, system will increase parking brake force automatically to hold it for safety. When parking brake force is increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.

  When the vehicle is powered on and parking brake can not be released manually by depressing brake pedal, you can depress accelerator pedal and press the electric parking brake button to release parking brake, it is only used when parking brake cannot be released manually by depressing brake pedal, pay attention to safety when using. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> To avoid accidental vehicle movement, when stopping or leaving the vehicle, after EPB system operates, the "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster will go off automatically after coming on for a certain period of time, in this case, check if "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on to ensure that electric parking brake is applied.

Emergency braking function

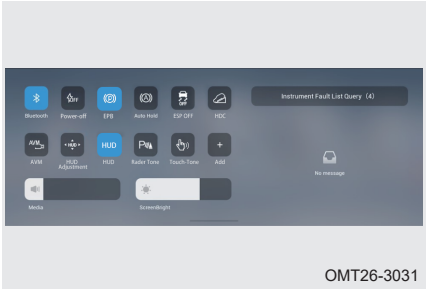
If foot brake fails, press P (shift lever or column shift) continuously to forcibly apply brake for the vehicle by parking brake. In process of emergency braking, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster flashes. Release the P gear to exit emergency braking.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
> - When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
> - Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
> - Emergency braking function can only be used in case of emergency such as foot brake failure or brake pedal stuck. ESP and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit. Use of the emergency braking function on windy roads, dangerous roads, in heavy traffic or severe weather, may lead to drifting, side slipping or pulling, so please be careful.

Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)

Auto hold system is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when vehicle is stationary and starts off.

Usage methods



OMT26-3031

Auto hold operation conditions

Driver seat belt is fastened, driver door is closed.

Turning on auto hold function

When auto hold conditions are met, click "Ⓐ" button on quick menu, and "Ⓐ" white indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that auto hold function has been turned on.

Activating auto hold function

When auto hold function is turned on, depress brake pedal, the gear position is in forward driving gear and changes to stationary state from movement, auto hold function is activated and "Ⓐ" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Depress brake pedal when vehicle is stationary, and the auto hold function is turned on at the same time and the condition of auto hold is met, then auto hold function is activated, "Ⓐ" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Turning off auto hold function

When auto hold function is turned on, click "Ⓐ" button on quick menu to turn off the auto hold function, "Ⓐ" white indicator on instrument cluster goes off, indicating that auto hold function has been exited.

When auto hold function is activated, click "Ⓐ" button on quick menu to turn off the auto hold function, "Ⓐ" green indicator on the instrument cluster goes off, indicating that auto hold function has been exited and switched to EPB function.

Auto hold release function

Way to release auto hold is the same as that of electric parking brake, including manual release and automatic release.

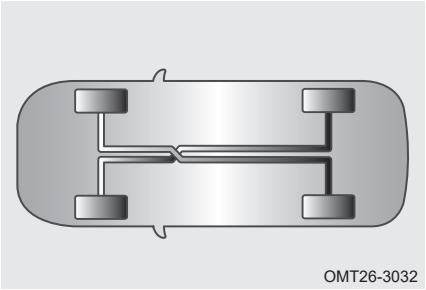
⚠ CAUTION

- Turn off auto hold function before driving into car wash.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto release of auto hold delays. This is normal.
- When auto hold function is activated, open driver door or unfasten driver seat belt, auto hold will switch to parking brake function.
- When auto hold function is enabled, open driver door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit auto hold function, close the driver door or fasten the seat belt again to activate the auto hold function again.
- After auto hold function is enabled, the auto hold system will automatically park the vehicle after the vehicle comes to a complete stop from motion state by foot brake, but the gear position is still in D. It is recommended to shift to N for a short time parking and shift to P for a long time parking.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of auto hold, confirm the shift position before you depressing accelerator pedal to start.

Foot Brake



The brake system adopts X type arrangement, double circuit brake system; The system is a hydraulic system with two independent subsystems. If one of the subsystems fails, the other system can still perform brake function. However, brake pedal depressing force will be greater than usual as well as the braking distance, and the brake system malfunction indicator remains on.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please contact the authorized service station as soon as possible.

Brake system indicator

When there is a fault, "(!)" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> When there is a fault in brake system, check the brake fluid level, add brake fluid when the level is lower than MIN line. If reason is unclear, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

Precautions for brake system

1. If there is continuous shudder or vibration being transferred to the steering wheel during braking, please contact the authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
2. When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause the brakes to overheat and braking distance will become longer, and the brakes may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
3. The brake system will make some noises sometimes during operation, which is normal, but if you hear metal friction or a whistling sounds over a period of time, the brake linings may be seriously worn. Please contact the authorized service station for replacement immediately.
4. The new brake linings must be break-in to reach optimal brake effect. Braking effect in the first 200 km is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
5. A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pulling to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brakes.

After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.

6. Wear condition of brake lining depends largely on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake lining worsen. Therefore, please go to authorized service station according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission belongs to the electronically controlled automatic transmission.



Fully depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to D; Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal, and then drive the vehicle slowly.

⚠ WARNING

- Never tow the vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When shift lever is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, at the same time "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on; transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

⚠ CAUTION

Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission will be damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Column Shift Switch



P gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and the shift lever is not in P. Press the button on the right side of column shift switch to shift the shift lever to P.

R gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move up to the top and shift the shift lever to R.

D gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move down to the bottom and shift the shift lever to D.

N gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to N by following operations.

1. When the gear position is in D/P, push up column shift once to shift to N.
2. When the gear position is in R, push down column shift once to shift to N.

Gear position introduction

Gear Position	Function
P gear	Park position. The vehicle can be started.
R gear	Reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and parking assist system will operate.
N gear	Neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.
D gear	Forward driving position. Automatically shifts up and down among forward drive gears according to engine load and vehicle speed.

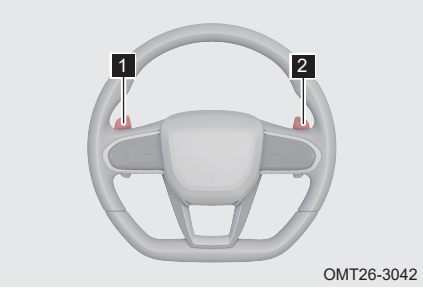
READ

The selected gear position will display the corresponding gear position on the instrument cluster. To avoid accidental vehicle movement, confirm the gear position before depressing accelerator pedal to start.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- Never shift in P position when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- When shifting the shift lever out of P, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform shifting among each gear position. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery (12 V), even depressing the brake pedal, shifting out of P is impossible, please contact the authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
- When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the parking brake must be applied first, and then the shift lever is shifted into P. After starting on a slope, first shift the shift lever out of P, then release parking brake for driving.

Shift Paddle (If Equipped)



When shift lever is in D position, move shift paddle once to enter manual mode.

1 In manual mode, move shift paddle "-" once to lower one gear.

2 In manual mode, move shift paddle "+" once to raise one gear.

■ Exit manual mode in following cases:

1. Move shift paddle "+" and "-" at the same time to exit manual mode.
2. If the shift paddle is not moved within a certain time (15 seconds) and the gear position is in D, exit the manual mode.

READ

In manual mode, up-shifting and down-shifting operations must be performed by moving shift paddle according to engine speed and vehicle speed. If the requirements are not met, the transmission will not perform the gear shifting operation.

CAUTION

- In manual mode, when the speed does not change, Kick-down operation is allowed, and automatic up-shifting is not allowed.
- In manual mode, when engine speed reaches to the highest speed, it shifts up automatically; when engine speed is excessively low, it shifts down automatically; when vehicle brakes and slows down, it shifts down automatically.
- When trying to make vehicle free from a stuck or wade, it is recommended to select lower gear manually to get larger wheel drive force and avoid water on road entering exhaust pipeline.
- Within the allowed engine speed range, transmission will lock at the gear position you selected manually. When vehicle is driving on a long downhill road, it is recommended to select lower gear manually to control vehicle speed better, and reduce vehicle braking force attenuation because brake pedal is depressed for a long time or frequently.

4-5. Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD)

Intelligent timely all-wheel-drive system distributes engine power to all four wheels at the same time.

IIntelligent timely all-wheel-drive system is suitable for snowy, sand, muddy and off-road. Different engine power is automatically distributed to the front and rear wheels, and this creates some advantages, for example, it will increase traction when slipping and make acceleration more stable.

⚠ CAUTION

- For temporary malfunction, "AWD" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on; For permanent malfunction, "AWD" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, instrument cluster displays "4WD system is malfunctioning, please contact service station" at the same time.
- When 4WD system is malfunctioning, electronic stability control system will sound an alarm and downgrade, only ABS is retained.
- When "AWD"yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, the vehicle will be driven with 2WD state to protect your normal driving.

Driving Mode

The vehicle is equipped with 7 driving modes: ECO (Economic mode)/ NORMAL (Normal mode)/SPORT (Sport mode)/SNOW (SNOW mode)/MUD (Muddy mode)/SAND (Sand mode)/OFF-ROAD (Off-road mode), and 4WD system operates intelligently in all modes to automatically switch between 2WD and 4WD. You can also set the driving mode manually according to judgment for road conditions, OFF-ROAD will help you get out of trouble in complicated road conditions.

Driving mode (knob operation)



With vehicle powered on or in READY state, and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely, turn the driving mode knob to cycle between all driving modes; And the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will turn on and accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.

- ECO mode: Improves the fuel economy of the vehicle and is suitable for the flat and hard roads such as urban roads and paved roads.

- Normal mode: Combines vehicle power and economy and is suitable for all kinds of roads.
- Sport mode: Improves vehicle power and realizes higher response speed and driving experience. It is suitable for wide and flat roads with few vehicles (such as motorway).
- Snow mode: Snow mode is suitable for hard but smooth road surface, including snow, ice, grass, gravel road, etc.
- Mud mode: Mud mode is suitable for muddy and uneven road surfaces with a smooth and shallow mud layer or rut.
- Sand mode: Sand mode is suitable for driving in soft and dry sand, beach or desert.
- Off-road mode: Off-road mode improves the acceleration performance, enhancing the vehicle trafficability. Suitable for mountain off-road and the vehicle out of trouble.

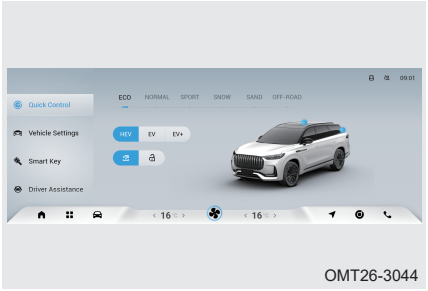
READ

- When windows and moon roof are open, rainfall may drench the interior equipment and cause damage to the vehicle. Always keep windows and moon roof closed during off-road driving.
- Acceleration is soft using ACC system in ECO (Economic mode)/SNOW (-SNOW mode)/MUD (Muddy mode). Acceleration is faster using ACC system in SPORT (Sport mode)/OFF-ROAD (Off-road mode).

CAUTION

- When electronic stability control system is turned off, even if SNOW (-SNOW mode)/MUD (Muddy mode)/SAND (Sand mode)/OFF-ROAD (Off-road mode) is selected, the vehicle skid limiting ability and get out of trouble ability is reduced.
- Do not drive the vehicle in sand or muddy roads for a long time or let tires in slippery state for a long time, overheat protection function of 4WD system may be triggered under these operations, "4WD" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, exit 4WD state and switch to 2WD to protect drive train; Please stop the vehicle to dissipate heat as soon as possible under the condition of safety and wait for a few minutes until the overheat protection function is exited (it is recommended to wait for a few minutes after the alarm is eliminated, so that the temperature of the 4WD system can be lower, and the performance can be better restored) before entering 4WD system again. Please contact authorized service station if the alarm cannot be eliminated for a long time.

Driving mode (audio operation)



OMT26-3044

With vehicle powered on or in READY state, and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely. click on Economic, Normal, Sport, Snowy, Muddy, Sand, Off-road through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Quick Control; And the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will turn on and accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.



OMT26-3045

With vehicle powered on or in READY state, and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely. Rotate driving mode knob, audio head unit pops up driving mode screen, click on the corresponding driving mode; And the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will turn on and accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.

Stuck vehicle

The vehicle may continue to sink if incorrect operation is performed when repeatedly driving back and forth to get out of stuck, at this time, ask for external rescue.

■ When wheel does not rotate smoothly

1. Shift the shift lever to R;
2. Carefully depress accelerator pedal and move backward along the original lane;
3. Carefully dig out all wheels and then make sure that no other parts are buried in the sand;
4. If the wheel does not operate, place tree branch, foot mat or sackcloth under the front part of tires to improve ground adhesion and drive force.

■ Repeatedly driving back and forth to get out of stuck

1. Straighten the steering wheel;
2. Move the vehicle backward until wheels start to slip;
3. Immediately shift to 1st gear and drive forward until wheels start to slip again;
4. Repeatedly perform this backward and forward driving operation until rotations of wheels are enough to move the vehicle backward and forward repeatedly to get out of stuck.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow wheels to slip for a long time, doing so may cause the vehicle to continue to sink.
- Do not stay in front of or behind the vehicle, especially when trying to drive a stuck vehicle.
- If a stuck vehicle suddenly moves, it may run over someone who stays in front of or behind the vehicle.
- A slipping wheel may cause rocks, branches, pieces of wood or other objects under the wheel to accelerate sharply, which could cause fatal injuries.

Before off-road driving

Before off-road driving, it is necessary to learn how to operate the vehicle in different off-road situations and how to safely pass through uneven off-road areas. Off-road driving requires different ability and behavior than driving on the road. The safety of driver and passenger depends on knowledge, skill and caution of driver.

⚠ WARNING

- Off-road driving always avoids bias driving on slopes.
- Always make the speed and driving style consistent with the current off-road situation.
- Carefully explore the route on foot before driving into an unknown off-road area.
- Do not drive too fast (especially when turning) or perform extreme driving operation.
- Always match the speed and driving style to load, visibility, off-road and weather conditions.
- Be sure to drive at the appropriate speed according to the actual off-road conditions, road conditions, traffic and weather.
- In the event of a turnover, a person who unfastens seat belt may be more likely to die than a person fastening seat belt.
- Luggage and other items being transported on the roof will further raise the center of gravity, increasing the risk of turnover.
- A vehicle with a high center of gravity has a greater risk of turnover than a "normal" passenger vehicle that is not suitable for off-road driving during driving.
- Always straighten front wheels if the vehicle is lifted. If the vehicle contacts with the road in an impact manner, the vehicle may roll over.
- Cruise control system is used for road driving and is not suitable for off-road driving at all, the vehicle may even be dangerous if the system is used for off-road driving.
- Always perform off-road driving with special care and foresight. Excessive speed or mishandling may result in serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not drive over river levee, ramp or slope at excessive speed. This may cause the vehicle to lift, making it impossible to turn and lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not choose an unsafe route or put driver and occupants in danger due to adventure. When there are doubts about the safety of a route, go back and choose another route.
- Even if it seems easy for off-road driving, it can actually be difficult and dangerous, and may put the driver and occupants at risk. It is best to explore off-road area on foot beforehand.
- Off-road area that does not seem dangerous can be fraught with danger. Pits, ditches, deep pits, deep valleys, obstacles, shallow banks, and loose muddy ground are often not easily identified and are completely or partially covered by water, grass, or tree branches scattered on the ground. Explore off-road area on foot if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not leave the vehicle through a door facing downhill if the vehicle is stopped sideways on a slope. The center of gravity created by the vehicle and its load (occupants and load) may shift, causing the vehicle to roll over and down the slope. Leave the vehicle steadily through the door facing uphill every time.
- Off-road area that does not seem dangerous can be fraught with danger. Pits, ditches, deep pits, deep valleys, obstacles, shallow banks, and loose muddy ground are often not easily identified and are completely or partially covered by water, grass, or tree branches scattered on the ground. When driving through this off-road area, causing accidents, serious injuries and vehicle failures.

After off-road driving

1. Remove the towing eyelet and tire chains if necessary.
2. Turn off OFF-ROAD (off-road mode).
3. Remove heavy dirt from radiator grille and vehicle deck board.
4. Check the engine compartment and check if the dirt affects engine operation.
5. Clean turn signal light, lighting devices, license plate and all window glasses.
6. Check tires, shock strut and axles for damage, and remove large dirt, stones and foreign objects embedded in the tire pattern.
7. Check the vehicle deck board and remove all objects stuck in brakes, wheels, chassis, exhaust devices and engine, such as branches, leaves or wooden blocks. If damage or leakage is found, please contact authorized service station immediately.

⚠ WARNING

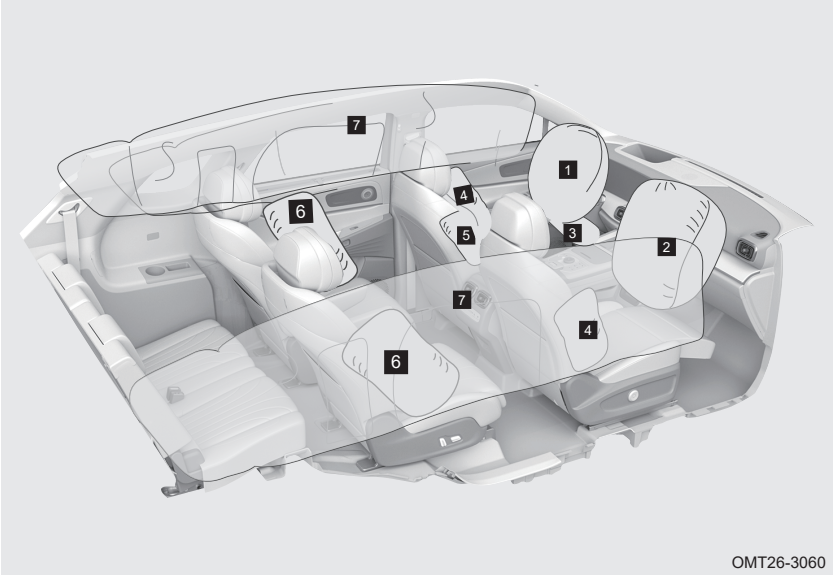
- Objects stuck under the vehicle deck board are dangerous. After each off-road driving, it is necessary to check if there is any object stuck under the vehicle deck board.
- Do not drive if there are objects stuck in the deck board, brakes, wheels, chassis, exhaust devices or engine.
- Flammable materials such as dry leaves or branches may catch fire when they come into contact with hot components. A fire may cause serious injury.
- The stuck objects may cause damage to fuel pipes, brakes, seals, and other chassis components. It may lead to accidents and cause the vehicle to run out of control.

4-6. Airbag

Airbag

In severe frontal/side collision, the airbags deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. Airbags can distribute impact force more evenly to upper parts of occupants' body, so their body move slowly until stop, thus minimizing injuries to occupants and driver. Automatically unlock doors, illuminate interior lights, and turn on hazard light after the airbag is deployed.

Airbag position



1 Driver frontal airbag

2 Front passenger frontal airbag

3 Driver knee airbag (If Equipped)

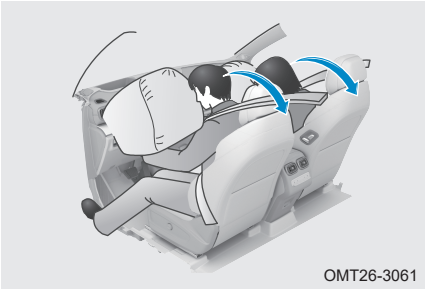
4 Front seat side airbag

5 Center airbag

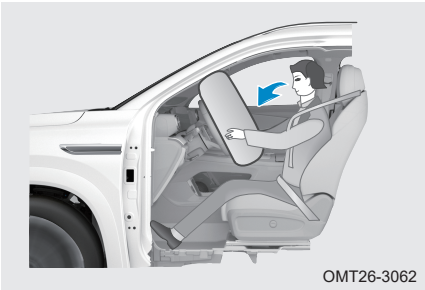
6 Second row seat side airbag (If Equipped)

7 Curtain side airbag

Using airbag correctly


OMT26-3061

In an event of a severe frontal collision, driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (If Equipped) work together with seat belts to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. (Front passenger frontal airbag may be activated even if there is no occupant in the front passenger seat).


OMT26-3062

The airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, seat belts are the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the driver and occupants. Therefore, all people in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly. Airbags and seat belts can provide protection only for adults, they are not designed to protect infants and young children.

The airbag will generate considerable force at the moment of deployment. In order to avoid injury caused by deployment of the airbag, the driver and occupants must adopt the correct sitting posture, correctly wear the seat belt and adjust their seat position, never get too close to the airbag (such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward). For vehicles equipped with front seat side airbag and curtain shield side airbag (If Equipped), ensure that the upper limbs are at a sufficient distance from the side of the vehicle to avoid injury during deployment.

⚠ CAUTION

- The related parts of airbag will generate heat after deploying. Do not touch the related parts of airbag immediately to avoid injury.
- The airbag is a non-reusable device. Once the airbag is deployed, the related parts of airbag must be replaced.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored (such as the steering wheel and instrument panel) are damaged or cracked, please go to the authorized service station for replacement as soon as possible.
- The deployment and contraction of the airbag is completed in a short period of time, and cannot protect against the impact of a second impact that may occur subsequently.
- The airbag is neither designed for rear collision, slight frontal collision, nor for vehicle rolling over, and it does not work when the vehicle is braked in an emergency.
- The airbags release some smoke and dust after deploying. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get out as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- The seat cover should not block side airbag (If Equipped) during using, as in the event of an accident, the side airbag (If Equipped) will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.
- A soft, dry cloth or cloth dampened with water must be used to clean the airbag area. Avoid any fluid entering into the airbag, otherwise it may seriously affect the normal function of airbag.
- If there is water in vehicle, the airbag may be damaged. Even if there is no collision at this time, it may cause the airbag to deploy accidentally. Turn off the engine immediately and disconnect the negative battery (12 V) cable. Do not try to start the engine. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Airbag indicator

The " " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on when it is malfunctioning, which is used to alert the driver that airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

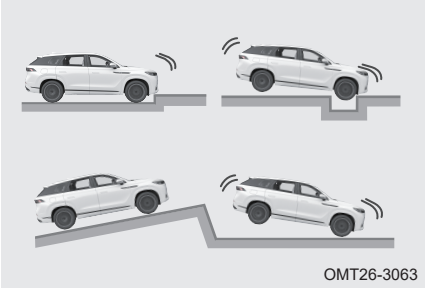
Airbag operating conditions

Deployment conditions of the airbag do not depend on driving speed of vehicle, but depend on the object, collision direction and vehicle deceleration conditions due to a collision. Airbags may be not deployed when impact of

collision is absorbed or dispersed into the body; However, the airbag can sometimes operate depending on the impact condition in an accident. Therefore, deployment conditions of the airbag should not be judged according to the damaged condition of the vehicle.

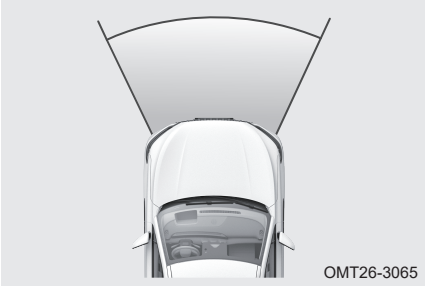
Even if the airbag is not deployed, a collision may damage the airbag in the vehicle. Airbag may not operate properly if damaged, and it will not be able to protect you and other occupants in the event of another collision, resulting in accidents and personal injury. In order to ensure that the airbag can be deployed properly in an event of collision, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy other than a collision


OMT26-3063

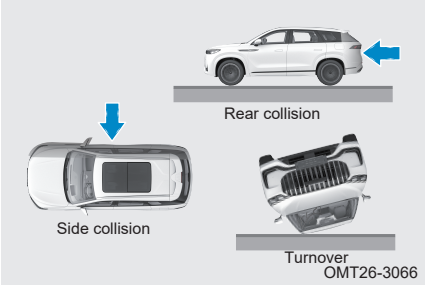
The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag, driver knee airbag (If Equipped) may deploy if an impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy in a collision


OMT26-3065

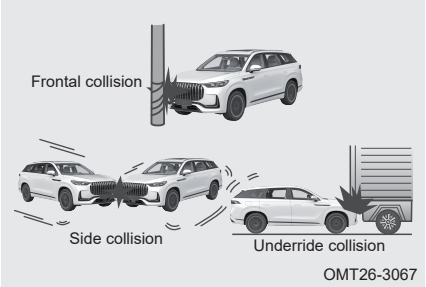
Operating conditions: In general, in an event of frontal collision, the driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (If Equipped) may deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.

■ Conditions under which airbag may not deploy during a collision

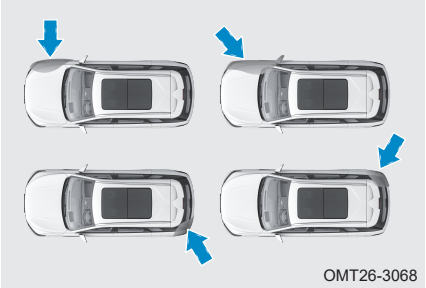


OMT26-3066

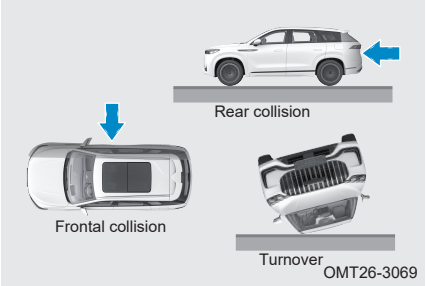
The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (If Equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (If Equipped) may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole, goes under a truck, or inclined side collision.



The front seat side airbag and curtain side airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side, the rear part of the rear tire or a side collision at certain angles to the vehicle.



The front seat side airbag and curtain side airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

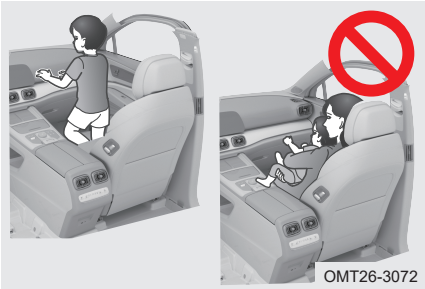
Precautions for airbag



There should be no objects on deployment path of airbag. It is forbidden to place anything (such as mobile phone, etc.) between the occupant and the airbag. Never fix or place any object on or near the airbag cover. If there is an object between occupant and airbag, the airbag may not deploy according to designed path, or the airbag may push object into occupant's body, causing serious injury or even death.



Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the instrument panel.

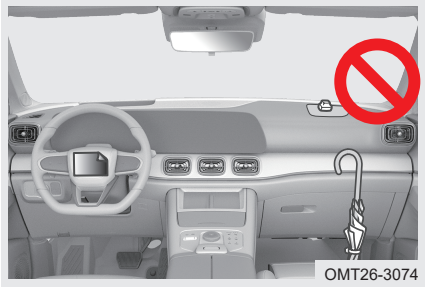


Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger frontal airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.

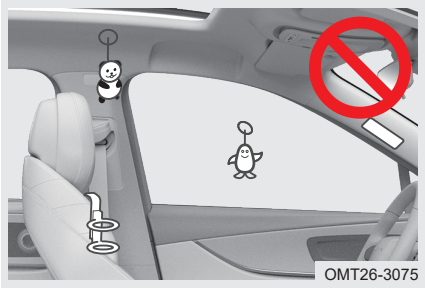


Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their heads or hands outside the vehicle.



Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items may be thrown out when driver frontal airbag or front passenger frontal airbag deploys.



Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of airbag components. Otherwise, it may cause airbag malfunction.

Replacement of airbag components

The related parts of the airbag must be replaced 10 years from the date of vehicle purchase. In order to make sure that the airbag can ensure your safety, please always contact the authorized service station to replace related parts of the airbag within the specified time.

Make sure that the new owner knows the airbag configuration and the replacement date of airbag in this vehicle when the vehicle is sold.

Modification and disposal of airbag components

Do not dispose of the vehicle or operate the following components without permission of the authorized service station, otherwise accidents and personal injuries may be caused:

1. Modification of vehicle suspension system.
2. Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.
3. Modification of side doors or door protective panel and B-pillar protective panel, etc.
4. Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags.
5. Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.

5-1. Intelligent active speed limiting (ISLC)

Intelligent active speed limiting (ISLC)..... 175

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS)..... 176

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) 177

Active Speed Limit (ASL) 183

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 184

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 184

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) 186

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped) 187

5-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped) 189

Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped) 191

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 191

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System (If Equipped) 192

Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System 192

5-5. Driving Safety Assist System

Head Up Display (If Equipped) 193

Leaving Reminder System (DAI) 194

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 195

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/ Front Collision Warning (FCW) System..... 197

5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System..... 201

Intelligent Avoidance System (IES)..... 204

5-7. Parking View Monitor System

Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM) 204

Parking Radar System 208

5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS) 211

5-9. Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System..... 212

ONE BOX braking system..... 213
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System 214
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 215
Extended Function 217
5-10. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)
Power Battery..... 218
New Energy Settings 221
Energy Recovery Intensity..... 223
Operating Mode 224
Charging Device 230
Charging Method 234
AC Charging Socket Electronic Lock 238
Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 240
Charging Precautions 240
Safety Warning for Charging..... 242
External Discharging Function (If Equipped)..... 243
External Discharging Method 243
Discharging Precautions ... 246
Safety Warning for Discharging..... 246
Pedestrian Reminder System 247
5-11. Data Privacy
Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)..... 248
Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)..... 248
Emergency call (eCall)..... 249

5-1. Intelligent active speed limiting (ISLC)

Intelligent active speed limiting (ISLC)

ISLC detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, and use the final speed limit information to remind the driver to pay attention to the various current road speed limit regulations in the form of image, sound, etc., to keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.



After ISLC detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, " ⊖ " indicator on instrument cluster comes on, if the speed exceeds current speed limit for 5 km/h, speed limit value flashes, prompt sound will sound 1 time.

Function limit

■ ISLC may not be able to recognize in following situations:

1. Faded signs.
2. Signs on curve.
3. Rotated or damaged signs.
4. High signs on highway.
5. Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
6. Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

READ
ISLC can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

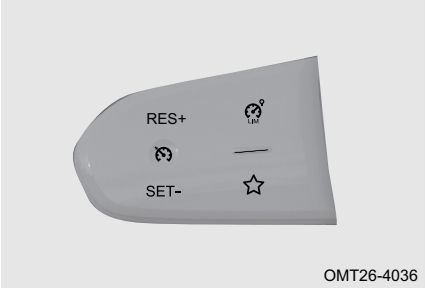
⚠ WARNING
• ISLC based on camera function is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions. • Speed limit assist system is only a driving assistance function and cannot completely replace driver's vision. Obstruced cameras or radar, imcorrect or missing speed limit information on the map, difficult road conditions and bad weather may all prevent this feature from working properly. In any case, drivers should take the initiative to pay attention to their own speed and road speed limit, and control their driving speed.

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS)

Cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver.

Cruise control system button



Cruise button " ": Turn on/off cruise control system.

Active speed limit button " ": Turn on/off active speed limit.

" RES+ " button: Resume cruise control system and adjust speed value.

" SET- " button: Set cruise control system, active speed limit and adjust speed value.

READ
" RES+ ", " SET- " button is shared button for cruise control system and active speed limit.

Usage methods

■ Entering cruise control system

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, press " " button to enter pre-cruising state, " " indicator on instrument cluster flashes; when vehicle speed is within 40 - 150 km/h, press " SET- " button again to set current vehicle speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting cruise control system

Press " " button to exit cruising state, and " " indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

During cruising, press " " button to exit cruise function, and " " indicator on instrument cluster goes off; Enter pre-speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Exit cruising state and enter pre-cruising state when brake pedal is depressed or sudden braking is applied during cruising, " " indicator on instrument cluster flashes. When vehicle speed is not lower than 40 km/h, press " RES+ " button, vehicle accelerates until it returns to the cruise state before exiting cruising.

■ Speed setting

Short press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase continuously.

Short press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease continuously.

Function limit

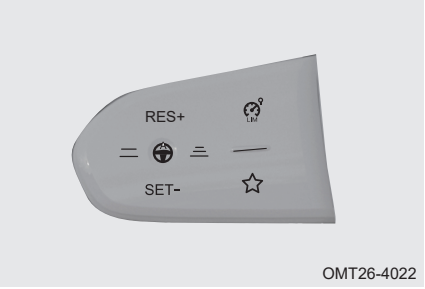
■ In the following conditions, do not use cruise control system, failure to do may cause an accident as well as injury and death.

1. During emergency towing.
2. In heavy traffic.
3. On winding roads.
4. On roads with sharp curves.
5. On slippery roads, such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow.
6. Vehicle speed may exceed set speed when driving up and down on a steep slope.

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)

Adaptive cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.

Adaptive cruise control system buttons



Main button "":

Activate/exit function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, short press main button to activate/exit ACC;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, long press the main button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

Active speed limit button "": Turn on/off active speed limit.

Following clearance increasing button "": Following clearance increasing adjustment.

Following clearance decreasing button "三": Following clearance decreasing adjustment.

"RES+" button: Resume the adaptive cruise control system and adjust speed value.

"SET-" button: Enter adaptive cruise control system, active speed limit and adjust speed value.

READ
RES + and SET- are shared button for adaptive cruise control system and active speed limit.

Adaptive cruise control system activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate adaptive cruise control system:

1. Gear position is in D position.
2. Front compartment cover is not opened.
3. Active speed limit is not turned on.
4. Driver door is closed.
5. Driver seat belt is fastened.
6. Parking brake is not applied.
7. Anti-lock brake system is not activated.
8. Electronic stability program system is turned on.
9. Electronic stability program system is not activated.
10. Hill descent control system is not turned on.
11. Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
12. Vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h or an object is recognized in front.

Usage methods

■ Enter adaptive cruise control system

With vehicle in READY status, when the activation conditions are met, it will enter the pre-cruising state automatically. "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on;

Method 1: In pre-cruising state, when vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, press "SET-" or "" button to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Method 2: In pre-cruising state, when vehicle recognizes the target ahead and vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, press "SET-" or "" button to set 15 km/h as cruise speed and enter cruising state, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Method 3: In current ignition cycle, press "RES+" button after exiting ACC, set the last cruising set speed and enter cruising state, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

READ

- ACC exits when turning on active speed limit.
- When there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle in the same lane, and driving speed is not higher than vehicle set speed, ACC system will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in front in the same lane, or there is a vehicle in front in the same lane and driving speed is higher than set speed, your vehicle will drive at the set speed.
- When applying parking brake and entering pre-cruising state, press "SET-" button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system", driver depresses accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.

■ Exit adaptive cruise control

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC system will exit:

1. Front compartment cover is opened.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Press " " button.
4. Driver door is opened.
5. Driver seat belt is not fastened.
6. Apply electric parking.
7. Anti-lock brake system operates.
8. Gear position is in a position other than D.
9. Automatic emergency braking system operates.
10. Turn on HDC system.
11. Electronic stability program system operates.
12. Electronic stability control system is not turned on.
13. Driver depresses accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

After the above conditions that cause the function to exit are resumed, press "RES+" button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

■ Speed setting

Short press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES+" button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h; when vehicle speed exceeds 90 km/h, set vehicle speed will increase by 10 km/h.

Short press "SET-" button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press "SET-" button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h; when vehicle speed exceeds 90 km/h, set vehicle speed will decrease by 10 km/h.

READ

- For ACC system, the lowest speed setting is 15 km/h and the highest speed setting is 150 km/h.
- Speed will be slightly lower than set speed when driving uphill, and will be slightly higher than set speed when driving downhill.
- When the cruise control system is in driver overtaking state, the cruise speed can be adjusted by pressing the "SET-" or "RES+" button, and the cruise speed adjustment logic is consistent with the logic when cruise is activated.

Following clearance

Press "三"/"二" button in cruising process, adjust following clearance which is divided into 5 levels from minimum clearance to maximum clearance.

READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, electronic stability program system continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

WARNING

- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.
- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

Overtaking

Depress accelerator pedal to exceed set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will pop up "Please take over the vehicle by driver" accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

Curve speed control

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
> - While entering a curve, due to limitation of detection target for sensor, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

Stopping and starting function

During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

1. Vehicle ahead starts to drive away within 3 seconds and the vehicle starts automatically to follow vehicle ahead.
2. If vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds and starts within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver needs to depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC.
3. When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfastens seat belt or opens driver door, EPB will be activated automatically for parking.
4. When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the ACC will exit, and EPB will be activated automatically for parking.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> During following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether the instrument cluster displays the vehicle target in front. If the instrument cluster does not display the target in front, it means that target in front of ACC system has been lost, and the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

Precautions for adaptive cruise control

1. Adaptive cruise control system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, adaptive cruise control system may select the vehicle as following target.
3. Adaptive cruise control system can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.

4. When stopping vehicle briefly by adaptive cruise control system, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
5. When adaptive cruise control function is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on. At this time, adaptive cruise control function fails, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
6. During adaptive cruise control system controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, adaptive cruise control system will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
7. Adaptive cruise control system has a limited brake time reaction; if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, adaptive cruise control system may not respond or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.
8. The distance to the vehicle ahead, adjacent lane conditions, and target type displayed on instrument cluster may be different from the actual situation. Driver must observe the vehicle and real road conditions in real time; Driver should adjust the proper distance from vehicle ahead and vehicle speed based on traffic flow, weather condition and other actual road conditions, and is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), adaptive cruise control system may not recognize a vehicle ahead. In this case, adaptive cruise control system should be turned off.
9. Adaptive cruise control system is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition. It is not recommended for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using adaptive cruise control system on curves, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed due to limitation of sensor detection range. In this case, adaptive cruise control system will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
10. During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, adaptive cruise control system may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
11. Camera sensor is installed behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified. When sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC function will be exited. Sensors may also be affected by vibration or collision, and system performance may be reduced or its function fails. In

this case, please go to authorized service station for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Active Speed Limit (ASL)

Driver drives vehicle at set limit speed.

Usage methods

■ Entering active speed limit

With vehicle in READY status, press "LIM" button to enter pre-speed limit state, "LIMIT ---km/h" indicator on instrument cluster remains on:

Method 1: During pre-speed limit state, vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, press "SET-" button to enter speed limit state, "LIMIT 30km/h" indicator on instrument cluster remains on, set vehicle speed is 30 km/h by default;

Method 2: During pre-speed limit state, and vehicle speed is within 30 - 200 km/h, press "SET-" button to set current speed as limit speed to enter speed limit state, "LIMIT 30km/h" indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting active speed limit

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, "CRUISE CANCEL ---km/h" indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

Press "LIM" button to exit speed limit state, "LIMIT 30km/h" indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

■ Speed setting

Short press "RES+" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES+" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h.

Short press "SET-" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press "SET-" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h.

Overtaking

In speed limit process, in order to overtake or in other operation condition, fully depress accelerator pedal to enter pre-speed limit state, "LIMIT ---km/h" indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is higher than previous set limit speed, it enters pre-speed limit state, "LIMIT ---km/h" indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is less than previous set limit speed, it enters speed limit state, "" indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane assist system includes LDW, LDP and ELK, which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

READ

- Keep front view multi-function camera free from obstructions (such as bird droppings, insects and ice, etc.).
- Lane line captured by camera: It can detect white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, such as rain, snow or fog and high contrast lighting will affect the sensor.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the lane assist system may not operate properly.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Lane assist system only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

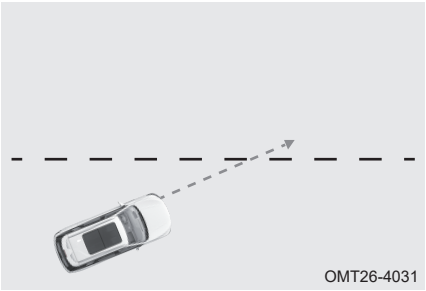
LDW detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. The system sends an alarm when wheel rolls over lane line and vehicle departs from its lane.



OMT26-4030

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Lane departure warning through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance, and set sensitivity and alarm mode.

Activating lane departure warning


OMT26-4031

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and lane line is recognized, LDW enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDW is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 65 km/h to 60 km/h, LDW enters limit status.

Lane departure warning indicator

When function is turned on/limited, "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, "" green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

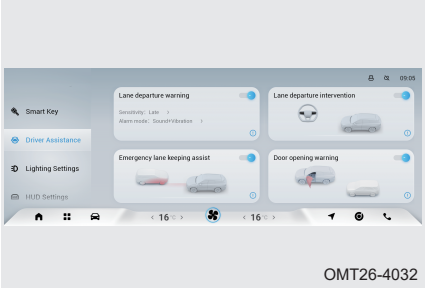
Function limit

■ LDW may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning with high speed.
3. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
4. When depressing brake pedal hard.
5. When turning on the hazard light.
6. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
7. When driving on roads with tight curves.
8. When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)

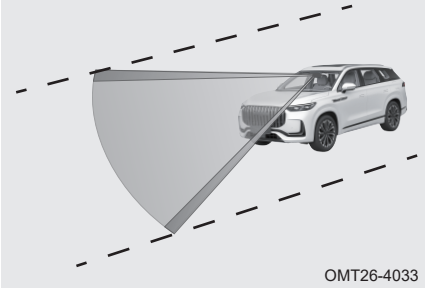
LDP monitors the relative position between vehicle and lane line by front view multi-function camera in real-time. When the vehicle is about to deviate from the lane, it controls the lateral movement and assists driver to keep the vehicle in the original lane.



OMT26-4032

With vehicle in READY status, turn on lane departure intervention through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance.

Activating lane departure prevention


OMT26-4033

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and lane line is recognized, LDP enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDP is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 65 km/h to below 60 km/h, LDW enters limit status.

⚠ CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

Lane departure prevention indicator

When function is turned on/limited, "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, "" green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ LDP may not work properly in the following conditions:

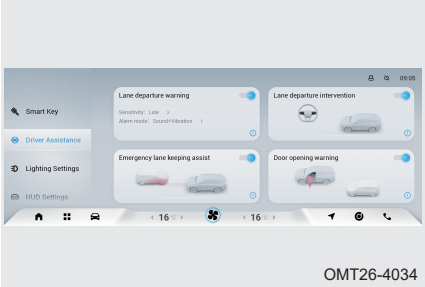
1. When changing lanes.
2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.
4. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
5. When lane line is lost.
6. When the braking force is too large.
7. When turning with high speed.
8. When hazard lights are turned on.
9. When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
10. When ABS system or ESP system is activated.
11. When TJA/ICA system is activated.
12. Steering wheel is operated by driver when LDP applies corrective steering intervention.

■ Under the following situations, do not use LDP. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped)

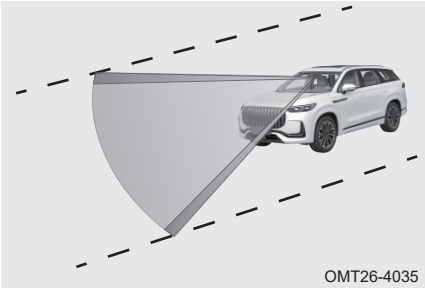
ELK system uses front view multi-function camera and rear corner radar to detect in real time that the vehicle departs from solid lane marker, road edge, oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes, if so, the vehicle continues to lateral movement or the system control lateral movement if necessary, which can keep the vehicle in the original lane and assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.



OMT26-4034

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Emergency lane keeping assist through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance.

Note: ELK is turned on by default after the vehicle is powered on.


OMT26-4035

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and vehicle target is monitored, ELK enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and vehicle target is monitored, ELK is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from above 65 km/h to below 60 km/h, ELK enters limit status.

⚠ CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

Emergency lane keeping indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " red indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ ELK may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.
4. When lane line is lost.

5. When the braking force is too large.
6. When turning with high speed.
7. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
8. When hazard lights are turned on.
9. When double solid line lanes are detected and turn signal light is turned on.
10. When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
11. When ABS system or ESP system is activated.
12. When TJA/ICA system is activated.
13. Steering wheel is operated by driver when ELK system applies corrective steering intervention.

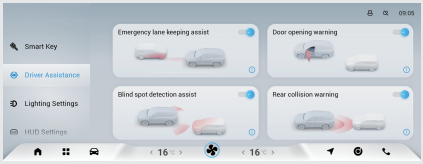
■ Under the following situations, do not use ELK. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

5-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped)

BSD system is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety. This system also extends some functions such as LCA, DOW, RCTA etc.



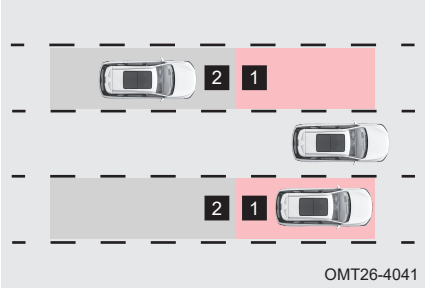
OMT26-4040

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Blind spot detection assist, Door opening warning, Rear collision warning, Rear cross traffic alert, Rear cross traffic brake or Reverse emergency brake through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance.

Note: BSD and LCA share blind spot detection switch.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Blind spot detection assist system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Activating Blind Spot Detection (BSD) / Lane Change Assist (LCA)



When speed is no less than 15 km/h, blind spot detection system is activated; When speed is decreases from above 15 km/h to 10 km/h, BSD enters pre-activating.

1 Detection area of blind spot detection system

2 Vehicle approaches detection area of blind spot detection system

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror remains on, "" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, turn on the turn signal light in the same side. After level alarm II is triggered, "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks, alarm sounds.

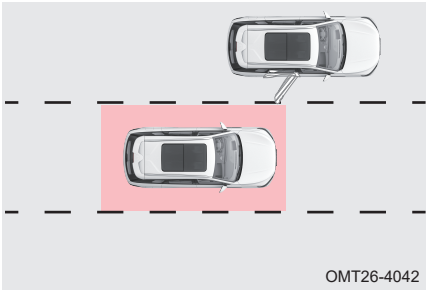
> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> - When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if drive on snowy road for a long time, blind spot detection assist system may not work.
> - When towing or attaching accessories to the rear of vehicle (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off blind spot detection assist system. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
> - BSD/LCA may detects stationary objects on or near a road (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles) to turn on warning light.

Blind spot detection system indicator

During operation, level alarm I " " green indicator in instrument cluster remains on; level alarm II "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped)



With vehicle in READY status, when the vehicle is stationary, if blind spot detection assist system detects approaching vehicles on left and right sides of the vehicle and any door is opened, DOW sounds an alarm to remind the driver/ occupant to pay attention to following vehicle when exiting to avoid collision.

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "" yellow indicator on corresponding side rear view mirror remains on, indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel remains on.

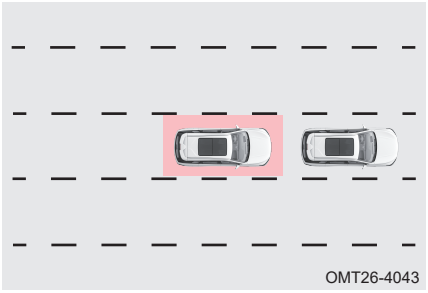
Level II: On base of level I, open the door. After level alarm II is triggered, "" yellow indicator on corresponding side rear mirror blinks, indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel comes on, alarm sounds.

Function limit

■ DOW may not work properly in the following conditions:

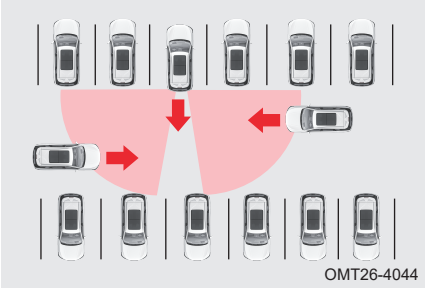
1. The vehicle speed is higher than 0 km/h.
2. After vehicle is powered off for 5 minutes.
3. When vehicle enters arming mode within 5 minutes after power off.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped)



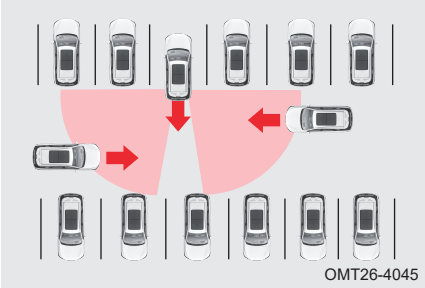
When the vehicle is in READY status and the vehicle speed is not less than 15 km/h, if a following vehicle quickly approaches the vehicle, instrument cluster alarms to remind the approaching vehicle behind.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped)



When the vehicle is in READY status and vehicle is reversing (-gear position is in R position), blind spot detection assist system detects that vehicles are approaching from left/right sides, " " yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks and alarm sounds.

Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System



RCTB warns and assists driver in braking when vehicle is in READY status, all doors are closed, the steering wheel angle is less than the threshold, the vehicle is reversing (gear position is in R position), the vehicle speed is not higher than 15 km/h and a vehicle or pedestrian crossing the road is encountered when exiting a perpendicular/oblique parking space. Help drivers avoid collisions with vehicles or pedestrians crossing the road, especially if the driver's view is blocked by vehicles parked nearby.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never modify the area around sensor in any way. After modification, it is recommended to turn off RCTB, otherwise the system may apply unnecessary braking.
- Certain scenarios can affect and weaken the detection of sensor, and the system may perform unnecessary warning and braking or fail to detect all obstacles.
- RCTB is an assist function, which can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.

5-5. Driving Safety Assist System

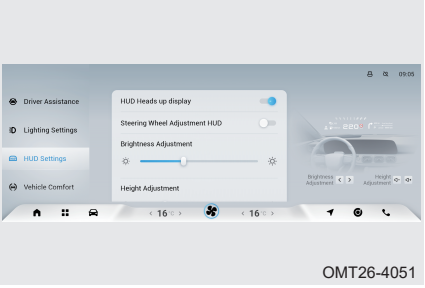
Head Up Display (If Equipped)

Head up display is a driving assistance instrument used in automobiles. Through optical systems and electronic control, the projected information (-such as driving status, driving assistance, navigation, entertainment, etc.) of the head up display is reasonably and vividly integrated with the actual traffic conditions and superimposed on the driver's effective view field, allowing the driver to obtain corresponding information in real time without adjusting their line of sight, enhancing their perception of the traffic environment.



OMT26-4050

The head up display is located in the front windshield area.



OMT26-4051

With vehicle in READY state, turn on HUD Heads up display through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - HUD Settings, and set Steering Wheel Adjustment HUD on/off, Brightness Adjustment, Height Adjustment, snow mode on/off, HUD information display, and default value restoring.

READ

- In snowy weather or poor visibility, it is recommended to turn on snow mode.
- Head up display automatically adjusts the brightness of displayed image according to the collected ambient brightness signal value, so as to adapt to different ambient brightness.

CAUTION

- When the head up digital display is blocked, the head up display cannot be used.
- The front windshield film may affect the brightness of the head up display image.
- If the driver wears polarized sunglasses, there is a risk of not being able to see the head-up display image.
- In extreme sunlight, the image display part may become dark, or even fade away and then recover, which is a normal phenomenon.

Leaving Reminder System (DAI)

DAI allows users to relax and focus on things other than driving when waiting in line at traffic lights controlled intersections or congested roads. When the traffic environment changes, it assists drivers in restoring driving in a timely manner.



OMT26-4052

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Vehicle departure warning through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance.

■ At intersections controlled by traffic lights or congested roads, when vehicle is waiting in line and meet the following conditions, the system will sound an alarm and the instrument cluster will dynamically display the vehicle ahead to remind the driver to resume driving:

1. Vehicle in front is detected leaving.
2. This vehicle is in a stationary state.
3. ACC system of this vehicle is not activated.

READ

When waiting in line, if another vehicle is inserted between your vehicle and vehicle in front, DAI system abandons the original vehicle target and selects the inserted vehicle as the new target.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire pressure monitoring system is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tire in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tire pressure is too low or temperature is too high, tire pressure monitoring system alarms.



OMT26-4054

When vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, if TPMS has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after several minutes, TPMS will send system malfunction warning, "(!)" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will blink for tens of seconds and then remains on, "-Abnormal Tire Pressure, Check" will be displayed for several seconds and then turned off, which can be checked on tire pressure display screen.

READ

Even if vehicle is equipped with tire pressure monitoring system, check if tire inflation pressure and appearance are normal before driving. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as necessary.

Low pressure warning

When tire pressure is less than 184 kPa and speed is higher than 30 km/h for a period of time, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire pressure value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle is switched to power on state and tire pressure is lower than 184 kPa, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire pressure value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tire to 230 kPa as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven at a speed higher than 30 km/h for a period of time, low pressure warning will be automatically canceled.

CAUTION

Low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tire wear (-serious tire wear may cause a risk of tire blowout), inspect causes of tire air leakage. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

High temperature warning

When tire temperature is higher than 85°C and speed is higher than 30 km/h for a period of time, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire temperature value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle is switched to power on state and tire temperature is higher than 85° C, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire temperature value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When high temperature warning occurs, after tire temperature is lower than 80℃ and the vehicle is driven at a speed higher than 30 km/h for a period of time, high temperature warning will be automatically canceled.

⚠ CAUTION
When high temperature warning occurs, stop driving at once to cool down tires naturally. Do not cool it down by pouring cold water, otherwise, tire may be damaged, causing an accident. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

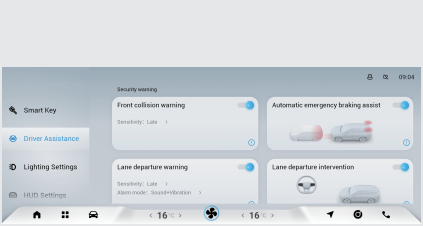
Function limit

■ Tire pressure monitoring system may send a system malfunction warning in the following conditions:

1. Configuration learning of tire pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tire included).
2. If tire pressure sensor or other components have been damaged, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as necessary.
3. Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tire chains, affecting tire pressure monitoring system proper operation.
4. The tire pressure monitoring system may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.
5. Tire pressure monitoring system may not operate due to radio interference; And it may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHz).

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System

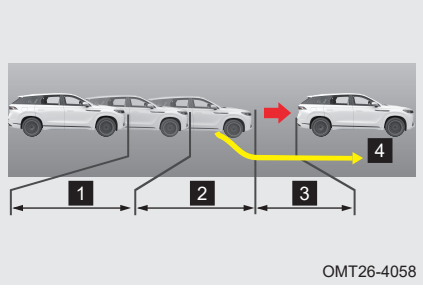
When vehicle is about to hit a vehicle or pedestrian ahead, automatic emergency braking system and front collision warning system work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.



OMT26-4057

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Automatic emergency braking assist, Front collision warning through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance.

Activating automatic emergency braking system/front collision warning system



OMT26-4058

1. Start pre-warning before impacting.
2. Start braking partly before impacting.
3. Start emergency braking before impacting.
4. If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

READ
Some configurations only work on vehicle targets, not pedestrians or cyclists.

⚠ CAUTION

- When vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, FCW system does not send an alarm; When speed is higher than 85 km/h, FCW does not sound an alarm for static target ahead.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 62 km/h for static vehicle target (4 - 48 km/h for some models); Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 85 km/h for moving vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 65 km/h for pedestrians and cyclists (not support for some models).
- Driver needs to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB system does not work.
- Turn on electronic stability program system, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system. Otherwise, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system do not work.
- "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver needs to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stop.
- During automatic emergency braking system is activated, driver quickly rotate steering wheel or depress accelerator pedal deeply, automatic emergency braking system will exit.

⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Automatic emergency braking system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The vehicle targets that can be detected by automatic emergency braking system include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some vehicles, such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis, the system has certain limitations in detecting.
- Automatic emergency braking system will work when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing). Automatic emergency braking system detects pedestrians who across the vehicle's lane, but automatic emergency braking system does not detect pedestrians who walk alongside the lane, who are around a corner or who are blocked by any other objects.
- Automatic emergency braking system will work when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements. Automatic emergency braking system does not detect an oncoming cyclist as target.
- Automatic emergency braking system is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and automatic emergency braking system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or not work for a variety of reasons. Automatic emergency braking system is only a driving assistance system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range.

Precautions for automatic emergency braking system

1. Automatic emergency braking system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
3. Automatic emergency braking system does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, oncoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
4. System performance will be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
5. Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when automatic emergency braking system is triggered.

6. When automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
7. When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system should be turned off.
8. When installing non-full size spare tire, it is recommended to turn off front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system, and replace full-size tires of original vehicle in time.
9. In some special circumstances, automatic emergency braking system may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as at track that crosses a road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
10. Camera sensor is installed behind windshield of vehicle; note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, front or surrounding areas should not be modified. When sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will exit. Automatic emergency braking system performance may be reduced or it may do not work due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to the authorized service station for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

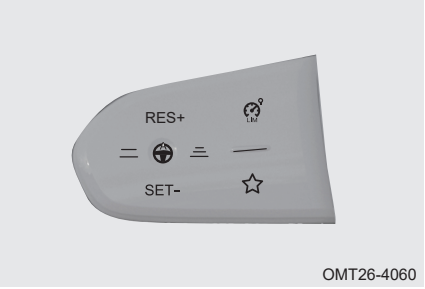
Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect automatic emergency braking system normal operation. Automatic emergency braking system function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System

TJA/ICA detects lane line through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assistance and reducing driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic. This system also extends the intelligent avoidance system.

Activating traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system



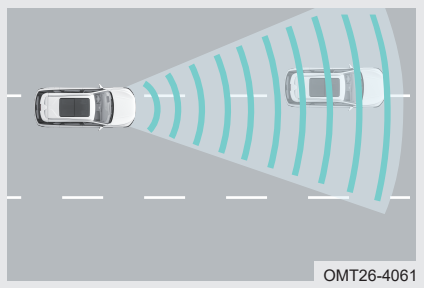
OMT26-4060

Main button "":

Activate/exit function: When TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, short press main button to activate/exit TJA/ICA;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, long press the main button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are not met, "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on; If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are met, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.


OMT26-4061

TJA: When vehicle speed is lower than 60 km/h, vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA: When vehicle speed is 60 to 130 km/h, vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

READ

When the vehicle uses the TJA/ICA function for the first time, and the lane lines on both sides are clear, turn on TJA/ICA function and drive the vehicle in a straight line within the lane lines for a certain period of time (with slight differences in the duration of individual vehicle), TJA/ICA function will automatically perform self-learning. During the self-learning period, the lateral control parameters will dynamically adapt and adjust until the optimal state is reached, and then self-learning is completed. Note: Before self-learning is completed, the centering effect of TJA/ICA function may not be obvious, and the deviation correction effect of lane assist system may not be obvious.

Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system indicator

When it is pre-activated, "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, "" blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. Hands off steering wheel.
2. Turn signal lights are turned on.
3. Hazard lights are turned on.
4. Lane line is not detected.
5. Overly narrow or wide lanes.
6. The vehicle speed is less than 1 km/h.
7. Too small lane curve radius.
8. Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
9. Any exiting condition for adaptive cruise control system exists.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Suggest to use traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

When Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system monitors vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h, the current lane lines are clear and persistent, and adaptive cruise control system is in cruising state, "" green

indicator on instrument cluster remains on. After a certain period of time, the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Road conditions are good, we suggest you to turn on Intelligent Cruise Control system".

Exiting reminder for traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

When traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system exits from the activated state, the system issues an alarm sound and the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Intelligent Cruise Control system has exited, please note" to inform the driver that the function has exited.



OMT26-4062

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Integrated Cruise Assist Exit Warning through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance.

If you feel that the exiting reminder will interfere with driving, you can turn off this reminder function according to your preference.

Precautions for traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

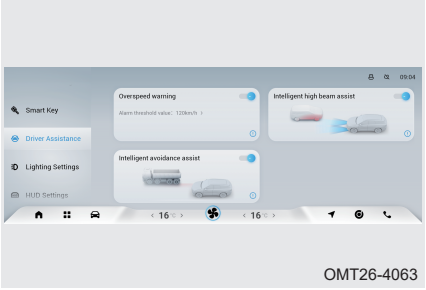
1. Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is a driving assist system, which cannot violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Longitudinal control of traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is performed by adaptive cruise control system, lateral control of traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is performed by lane keeping assist system, all precautions for adaptive cruise control system and lane keeping assist system are also applicable to the system.
3. Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system do not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Under the conditions such as turning, crossing, merging and vehicle ahead cuts in, diver should control vehicle at all times to ensure safety.
4. Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line clarity. Under the conditions of backlight, sunset, night, snow and ice on the road surface and unclear lane lines due to road wear, the performance will be significantly reduced or even lost.
5. When traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, at this time, traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system will not

work, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take responsibility for the vehicle control.

Intelligent Avoidance System (IES)

Under the active control of traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system (driving in the lane), when the vehicle speed is between 60 to 130 km/h and vehicle is about to overtake larger vehicles (such as trucks and buses) in the adjacent lane, the system controls the lateral movement of vehicle appropriately to keep it away from large vehicles until the overtaking is completed.



OMT26-4063

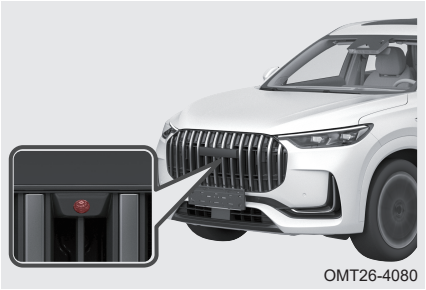
With vehicle in READY status, turn on Intelligent avoidance assist through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance.

5-7. Parking View Monitor System

Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)

Panoramic view monitor system collects surrounding images of vehicle through four cameras, and displays the surrounding images and lane guideline on audio head unit, so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

Camera layout


OMT26-4080

Installation position of front camera: Intake grille of front bumper.

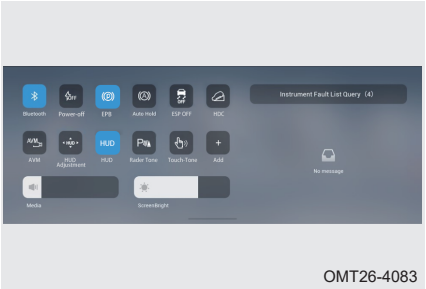


Installation position of left/right camera: Bottom of left/right outside rear view mirror.



Installation position of rear camera: Upper middle part of rear license plate.

Usage methods



Vehicle is in READY state and stationary, click " AVM " button on quick menu to enter panoramic view monitor system; Click " ⮌ " button to exit panoramic view monitor system.

When vehicle is in READY state and vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h:

Method 1: Move shift lever to R to enter panoramic view monitor system; Move shift lever out from R to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Method 2: Turn at a large angle to enter panoramic view monitor system (it is necessary to turn on "turn to activate panoramic view monitor").

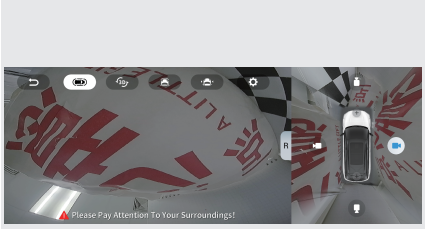
Method 3: Turn on the left/right turn signal light to enter panoramic view monitor system (it is necessary to turn on "operate turn signal lights to activate panoramic view monitor"); Turn off left/right turn signal lights to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Note: When switching vehicle power to OFF mode or vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, it exits panoramic view monitor system.

READ

The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

Switching view



OMT26-4084

Click "" button, and shift lever is not in R, exit panoramic view monitor system.

Click "" button to enter panoramic view monitor system setting.

Click " " button to switch to unilateral + birds-eye view.

Click " " button to switch to 3D view + birds-eye view; Click " " button around the birds-eye view of vehicle to switch the corresponding 3D view.

Click "" button to switch to front wide-angle view, and then click button again to switch to rear wide-angle view.

Click "" button to switch to front wheel side view, and then click button again to switch to rear wheel side view.

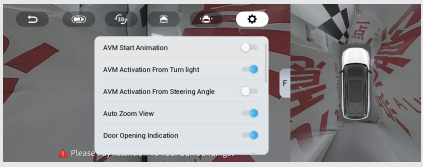
READ

The panoramic view monitor system is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in an open and convenient area.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Do not place any object on the camera of panoramic view monitor system.
- The object distance seen from the panoramic view monitor system is different from the actual distance.
- Before using panoramic view monitor system, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close the back door firmly.
- The panoramic view monitor system has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal/installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

System setting



OMT26-4085

[Panoramic View Starting Screen] Click " AVM " button for the first time to enter AVM and panoramic view starting screen.

[Steering Linkage] Turning at a large angle to enter AVM. When turning on left/right turn signal light, 3D view of rear left/right of vehicle will be displayed.

[Auto Zoom View] Enter enlarged view automatically based on obstacle distance.

[Door Open Indication] Prompt the status of moon roof, doors and back door.

[Lane Guideline Display] When entering AVM, load the static/dynamic lane guideline and wheel track line.

[Parking Radar Display] Display corresponding radar distance information (red, yellow, green areas).

[Transparent Body] Change the transparency of vehicle model.

[License Plate Number Setting] Set and display the corresponding license plate number information on vehicle model.

[Restore Default Setting] Restore default settings.

⚠ CAUTION

When the AVM system is turned on, the host displays the AVM system interface. When the host detects that the system or one or more cameras are malfunctioning, the corresponding single-side view and bird's-eye view will appear black screen display and corresponding text or icon prompts. At this time, the AVM system may not be used normally, and the black screen fault may occur in the following scenarios:

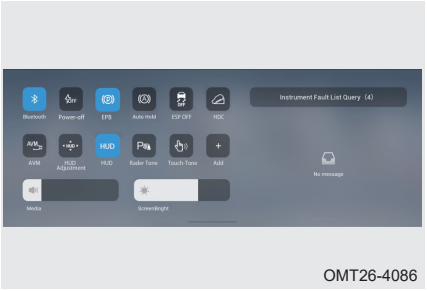
- Do not use high-pressure water or steam to rinse the camera sensor area, otherwise water or steam will enter the camera and condense on the lens, causing blurred images or even causing a short circuit in the camera, resulting in a black screen phenomenon in the camera image.
- Do not tap or bump the camera in any way. Severe tapping and bumping may cause the camera position to deviate or the device to be damaged, which may cause the camera interface to appear misaligned or black screen.
- Non-professionals should not disassemble camera equipment. If there is a poor connection between the vehicle and the rear view camera display system, the camera may appear black screen.
- If the black screen occurs in the camera during heavy rain, please check whether water enters the camera installation position. If water enters through the gap of the connector, a short circuit may occur in the around view monitor, which may cause the camera screen to go black.
- When other electrical equipment is working at full load, the rear view camera display system may be affected by voltage fluctuations, which may cause the camera screen to go black. You can try to disconnect other electrical equipment and restart the vehicle to restore the normal use of the camera function.

The above scenario does not fully cover all the situations where the AVM system has a black screen display fault. In order to ensure the normal use of the function, when the system has a black screen fault, go to the local after-sales service center as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

Parking Radar System

Parking radar system is a radar detection device, adopts radar sensors (4 sensors or 8 sensors) to detect if there are obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle and distance from obstacles. The driver is prompted by the audio head unit display, sound alarm, etc., so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

Parking radar switch (If Equipped)



OMT26-4086

With vehicle in READY state, when vehicle is stationary and not in P, click "P" button on quick menu to turn on parking radar system; Click "P" button again to exit parking radar system.

Note: When parking radar system is operating and vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, it exits parking radar system; when vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h, it is necessary to click "P" button again to reactivate the system.

READ

Parking radar button is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Usage methods

Method 1: With vehicle in READY state, move shift lever to R position to activate parking radar system; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

Method 2 (If Equipped): With vehicle in READY state, when vehicle is stationary and not in P, click "P" button on quick menu to activate parking radar system; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

Note: When radar sensor is malfunctioning, parking radar system will sound for 2 seconds when it is turned on. When parking brake is applied or the shift lever is in P, the radar sensor malfunction warning sound will be shielded.

READ

- Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and radar sensor.
- When parking brake is applied with radar activated, audio system will only display arc information, and audio system prompt does not sound.
- For models with 8 sensors, regardless of whether the parking radar system is activated before moving shift lever to R position, parking radar system still operates when shifting to other positions (except for P gear).

⚠ CAUTION

- For obstacles out of detection range, radar sensors will not alarm.
- When vehicle is moving, be aware that the reverse radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

Function limit

■ Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:

1. When vehicle is on a steep slope.
2. When driving in jelly-like snow or rain.
3. Low objects such as rocks, etc. cannot be detected.
4. Objects higher than bumper cannot be detected.
5. Thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc. cannot be detected.
6. When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.
7. When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.
8. When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.
9. Objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves (such as soft snow, cotton, sponge) cannot be detected.
10. When there is noisy near the vehicle, (such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves).
11. If multiple radar sensors detect multiple obstacles, the distances between each radar sensor and each obstacle are displayed on audio head unit simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.

Cleaning radar sensor


OMT26-4087

When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of radar sensor.

High pressure water flow such as water guns or large external forces may damage the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, otherwise the sensors will not work normally.

5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System(DMS)

DMS (Driver Monitoring System) uses the infrared camera arranged in the cabin to monitor driving status of driver in real time and collects the face image of driver (such as yawning, eyes closed, nodding, etc.) and line-of-sight area information in real time, judging the driver status in real time. The camera only captures the face of driver, does not capture the rest of the vehicle. The entire face information captured will not be used for personal identification and will not be stored. The system is enabled by default.

■ Main function

1. Determine if driver is fatigued by monitoring facial expression, eye closure, blinking frequency, etc. of driver. When detecting that driver is in a state of fatigue, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
2. Determine where the driver is looking and if the driver is distracted by tracking driver line-of-sight. When the driver is detected to be distracted, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
3. The system is enabled by default every time the vehicle is started, and can be turned off manually on head unit screen. After each power-on, the system will perform self-check, when the camera is blocked or system is malfunctioning, the corresponding prompt will display on instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- DMS can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- When driver monitor system is activated, "" indicator on the meter comes on; when driver monitor system is abnormal, "" indicator on the meter comes on. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h, driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is in a fatigued driving state.
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h, driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is distracted or does not respond to the reminder.

⚠ WARNING

Driver fatigue monitoring system is only an auxiliary tool. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle. Fatigue and distracted driving are strictly prohibited. He/she must always concentrate on driving carefully.

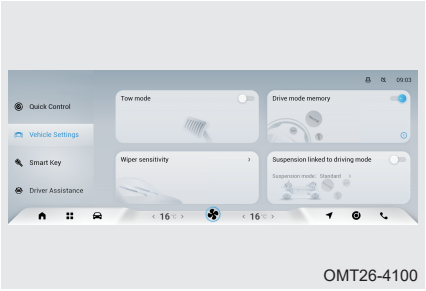
5-9. Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System

Integrated braking force control system is an advanced decoupling electro-hydraulic brake system, which can provide the vehicle with power as "it needs" according to the driver's braking requirement, enhancing vehicle stability and comfort.

Braking feeling

Integrated braking force control system is equipped with two kinds of braking feeling (standard/comfort/sport), which is used to adjust brake pedal feeling. The relationship curve between brake pedal depth and vehicle deceleration is different in different modes, and the driver can select preferred style of braking feeling.



OMT26-4100

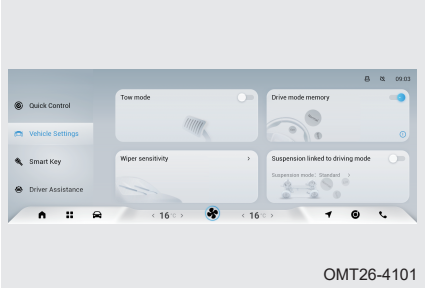
With vehicle in READY state, turn on Suspension linked to driving mode through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance, Standard/Comfort/Sport can be set separately after turning off.

READ

Braking feeling can be associated with driving mode. After association, the braking feeling is Mid in the vehicle normal mode/ECO mode, while the braking feeling is Sport in vehicle sport mode; After disassociation, braking feeling can be set to Mid/Sport separately.

Comfort Stop (CST)

When vehicle decelerates and stops in non-emergency situations, integrated braking force control system reduces the suspension tilt and impact at the moment of stopping by controlling braking pressure of four brakes, so as to provide the driver with the feeling of smooth stopping.

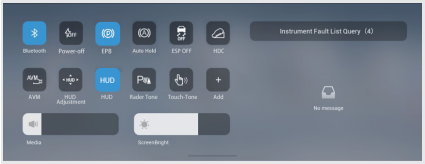


OMT26-4101

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Brake pitch control through Audio System - Vehicle Settings - Driver Assistance, and set sensitivity.

ONE BOX braking system

ONE BOX braking system keeps vehicle stability when oversteering or understeering. When oversteering or understeering is detected, system applies braking to one or more wheels to enhance control of vehicle stability and ensure the lateral stability of vehicle driving.



OMT26-4102

With vehicle in READY status, click "OFF" button on quick menu to turn on/off electronic stability program system.

READ

- Electronic stability program system cannot be turned off during operation.
- Electronic stability program system alarms abnormally after replacing with the non-full size spare tire. After using the normal size tire and driving for 1 km, it will automatically return to normal.

Electronic stability program system indicator

When turning off, "OFF" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

During operation, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ WARNING

- When electronic stability program system is malfunctioning, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Even when electronic stability program system is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause accidents.
- Electronic stability program system function does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it has lost control due to various extreme situations. Even with electronic stability program system, always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.
- The function of driver assistance relies on ESP for safety. If ESP is turned off, many functions of driver assistance will not be available, temporary malfunction light may appear on the instrument cluster to indicate that the function is not available (not driver assistance system failure). In order to continue to use the driver assistance function, turn on ESP function again, the driver assistance function will recover.

Function limit

■ Under the following conditions, electronic stability program system needs to be turned off:

1. When driving with tire chains.
2. When starting vehicle on power tester.
3. When driving on roads with deep snow or loose gravel.

READ

To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn electronic stability program system off.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

Hill descent control system can help vehicle drive on steep roads safely under controlled conditions. After hill descent control system is turned on, when vehicle is driving down on a steep slope, speed control range is 10 - 35 km/h. When initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.



OMT26-4103

When vehicle speed is ⩽ 60 km/h, click "" button on quick menu to turn on/off hill descent control system.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before entering steep road, set hill descent control system so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When hill descent control system is working, the anti-lock brake system will start automatically if there is a tire lock.
- When hill descent control system is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- Hill descent control system actively applies braking force through the operation of electronic stability program system. There will be a hydraulic operation sound when the system is working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the electronic stability program system fails, the hill descent control system cannot be turned on. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

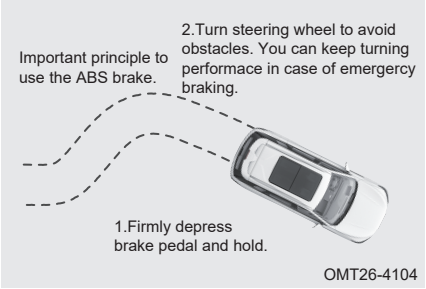
Hill descent control system indicator

When it is activated, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Anti-lock brake system can prevent wheel from being locked in excessive braking or braking on a slippery road, avoiding vehicle sideways slippage or vehicle drifting and keeping vehicle stability.



Anti-lock brake system does not function during normal braking and operates only (brake pedal pulsates with noise, ensuring brake performance and steering performance, if the space is enough, the vehicle can also avoid obstacles) during sudden braking. Never release brake pedal in this case.

⚠ WARNING

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- When anti-lock brake system is malfunctioning, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Although anti-lock brake system can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, anti-lock brake system cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, driving through water, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- Anti-lock brake system cannot ensure that braking distance can be shortened in any situations. When vehicle is equipped with tire chains, on sand or snow covered roads, vehicles with anti-lock brake system may require a longer braking distance compared to vehicles without anti-lock brake system.

Anti-lock brake system indicator

When there is a fault, "(ABS)" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ WARNING

When anti-lock brake system malfunction indicator and brake system malfunction indicator remain on at the same time, park your vehicle in a safety place far away from major traffic and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Function limit

■ Anti-lock brake system will make operation sound in following conditions:

1. Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
2. Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
3. Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.

4. Operation sound of solenoid valve when electronic brake force distribution system is intervened in braking.
5. Buzz will be heard for a short time after vehicle is powered on or engine is started, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

1. When driving on rough roads.
2. When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
3. When driving with tire chains.
4. When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

⚠ CAUTION

Tire size, specification and tread pattern wear will seriously affect anti-lock brake system performance. Replaced tires should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When a tire is faulty, it is recommended to replace with an original brand at the authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- When driving on rainy days, properly control the vehicle speed, because if the wheel spins or slips, anti-lock brake system will lose control of vehicle.
- Although anti-lock brake system can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even anti-lock brake system operates.

Extended Function

Brake Force Distribution System (EBD)

EBD system automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD system works together with ABS system to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in curve, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

Hill-start Assist Control System (HAC)

HAC can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HAC system adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HAC system automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 1-2 seconds to hold the

vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

Traction Control System (TCS)

During starting off or rapidly acceleration, driving wheels may slip. On slippery roads such as snowy or icy road, direction could get out of control and cause a dangerous situation. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a feature of slip) using sensors, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel will no longer slip.

Hydraulic Brake Assist System (HBA)

HBA system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, HBA will operate. When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, HBA quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system shorten braking distance more quickly and effectively.

Drag Torque Control (DTC)

In normal driving, if release accelerator pedal quickly or shift the shift lever to lower gear by mistake, vehicle will produce a similar braking effect, especially on slippery road, the wheel will lock up. At this time, ESP will request engine to increase torque output, resume rotation of drive wheels, improving steering stability.

Roll stability control System (RSC)

RSC system is used to prevent vehicle from rolling over on road when operating vehicle in dynamic (such as lane change) state.

Brake Override System (BOS)

When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.

5-10. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

PHEV can be driven by fuel energy and electricity energy, which combines the advantages of electric vehicle and fuel vehicle, there is no need to worry about driving mileage of electric vehicle and high fuel consumption of fuel vehicle. It satisfies economy, energy-saving and environmental friendly.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The main method of charging power battery is to plug in the external power gun for charging, and power battery can also be charged by motor when braking, sliding or starting engine.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10℃, it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure, which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ The following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. It is recommended to charge the power battery fully with a charging device at least once every month.
2. When SOC is less than 20% during driving, avoid sudden acceleration and high-speed driving, and charge it as soon as possible.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45 ℃ and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the power battery should be charged and maintain the SOC at 50%-70%. Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of the power battery and decrease the power battery performance, and vehicle malfunction and damage caused by this will not be guaranteed.
6. For a new vehicle, when the power battery is in normal condition, vehicle driving mileage may fluctuate due to driving habits (such as frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (such as driving on a large and long slope), temperature (such as low temperature) and whether electric equipment (such as air conditioning) is turned on, which is a normal phenomenon.
7. Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have

been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to authorized service station for inspection. If authorized service station checks that the total capacity of power battery is in normal range, the decrease of trip mileage may be caused by external reasons such as driving habits, temperature etc.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment.

According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please go to authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service station for used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.
3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.
4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

⚠ WARNING
• Do not dispose of power battery by yourself. • Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery. • When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always go to authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to go to authorized service station to have professional serviceman install and maintain power battery and observe related safety

regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

   The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.

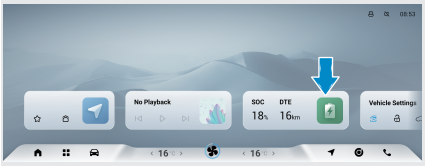
2. Heat insulation in any environment

   Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.

3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

   Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

New Energy Settings



Click new energy APP to enter new energy setting screen.

New energy setting screen can display energy flow state, and can set for power management, charging/discharging management etc.

Energy flow



OMT26-1012

Energy flow screen displays current energy flow condition.

Energy consumption list: Click to query the data of total mileage/total driving mileage/recent 50 KM/since startup/since reset.

Energy Flow Condition	Description
Pure electric drive	Only motor drives the vehicle, the engine is not working.
Extended range mode	Engine charges the power battery, and motor drives the vehicle to drive.
Parallel drive	Engine and motor drive vehicle at the same time.
Engine direct drive	Engine drives vehicle directly.
Generating electricity when driving	Engine charges power battery when engine drives the vehicle.
Generating electricity when parking	Engine charges power battery when parking.
Feedback brake	Motor recovers braking energy and charges power battery.

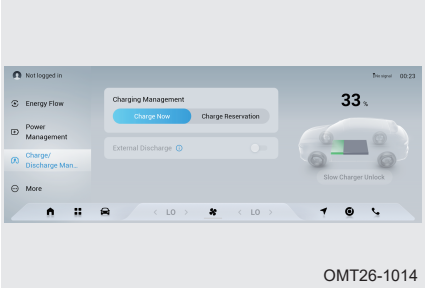
Power management



OMT26-1013

Power management screen can be selected to Initial mode, Smart mode, and Forced mode according to your needs. It is recommended to select Smart mode, which can achieve a better balance of driving power and economy.

Charging/discharging management



OMT26-1014

Select charge now, charge reservation, external discharge on charging/discharge management screen according to your needs.

Charge now (If Equipped): Plug in charging gun to charge immediately.

Charge reservation (If Equipped): Plug in charging gun before leaving the vehicle, set the start time and charging time, then charging can be started when appointed time is reached.

External discharge: Connect the discharging gun, set the discharging time to discharge.

Slow charger unlock: Click to unlock the AC charging gun and stop charging.

READ

Charge Reservation is only suitable for AC charging, including portable AC charging devices and private charging piles, and needs to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.

More



OMT26-1015

Energy recovery intensity, pure electric mileage display, driving distance display, ECO mode and disclaimer can be set on setting screen according to your needs.

Energy recovery intensity: Set Low/Medium/High.

Pure electric mileage display: Set battery level/standard mileage/dynamic mileage.

Driving distance display: Set total distance/HEV distance/EV distance.

ECO mode: Reduce power consumption by adjusting display brightness, speaker volume, turning off ambient light, and other settings.

Disclaimers: Click to check.

READ

Appointment trip is only suitable for AC charging, which includes portable AC charging device and private charging piles, and it is recommended to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.

WARNING

The pedestrian protection sound can only be turned off when there is no other road user within a short distance and the surrounding environment clearly does not require a prompt sound. As long as pedestrian is likely to appear around the vehicle, pedestrian protection sound needs to be turned on.

Energy Recovery Intensity

When vehicle is coasting, the system will convert the mechanical energy of motor into electrical energy to recover energy and charge the power battery, thus reducing energy consumption.



OMT26-1016

New energy setting screen - More - Energy Recovery Intensity: Set Low/ Medium/High.

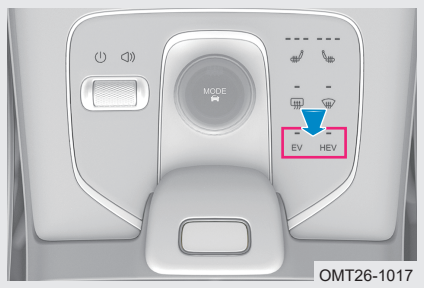
Energy Recovery	Function
Energy recovery intensity is low	The vehicle coasts for a long distance and driving comfort is better.
Energy recovery intensity is medium	It is suitable for most driving habits because it combines driving comfort and energy recovery efficiency.
Energy recovery intensity is high	Vehicle deceleration is highest and it can recover more energy.

READ

- Under conditions of a higher SOC or low ambient temperature, there may be difference in the driving experience of energy recovery.
- Energy recovery intensity is set as low or medium for a better balance of driving comfort and economy. Energy recovery intensity is set as high, which may cause a dragging feeling, so it is recommended for high speed driving.

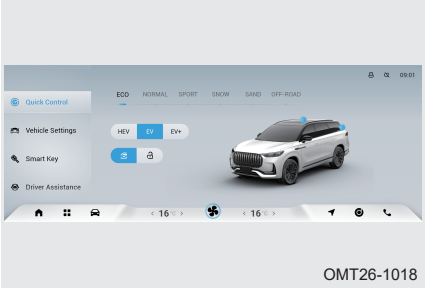
Operating Mode

Power mode



OMT26-1017

With vehicle in READY state, press EV/HEV button to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.



OMT26-1018

With vehicle in READY state, click HEV/EV/EV + button through Quick Control in Vehicle Setting of Audio System to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

Note: The setting item screen is different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Power Mode		Description
EV mode	EV	The vehicle is driven by pure electricity and the engine does not start.
	EV+	Increase the depth of discharge to provide a longer pure electric driving mileage than EV mode. It is recommended to use this mode only in an emergency to reduce the deep discharge of the battery, which is helpful for improving the maintenance of battery.
HEV mode	HEV	The vehicle is driven by hybrid power, and the engine can start or stop at any time to participate in driving or power generation according to requirements of working conditions.

READ

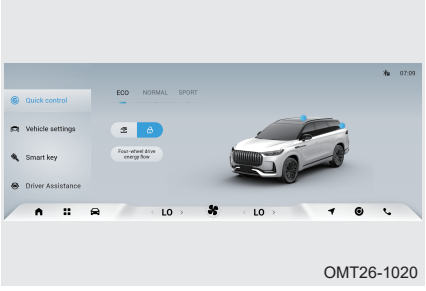
- With vehicle in READY state, P gear and HEV mode, when the power battery level is below a certain value, depressing the accelerator pedal can trigger the forced parking power generation function.
- When the power battery level is higher, the vehicle will automatically switch to electric mode (EV mode) if it is in READY state. It is recommended that you prioritize the use of electric mode (EV mode).
- When vehicle runs continuously in electric mode, pure electric driving mileage decreases with the decrease of battery level. When power battery level is too low, it will switch to HEV mode automatically.
- In some conditions (such as low battery level), it may be impossible to switch from HEV mode to electric mode, and "Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.
- If vehicle is used in electric mode for a long period of time, the lubrication condition of engine may deteriorate due to infrequent use, therefore, the engine will be automatically started for self-maintenance at regular intervals. Once the maintenance is completed, the engine will automatically shut down.

Driving mode



OMT26-1019

With vehicle in READY state, turn "MODE" knob to cycle through the driving modes; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on, accompanied by voice reminder, to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.



OMT26-1020

With vehicle in READY state, click ECO/NORMAL/SPORT button through Quick Control in Vehicle Setting of Audio System to switch the driving mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on, accompanied by voice reminder, to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.



OMT26-1021

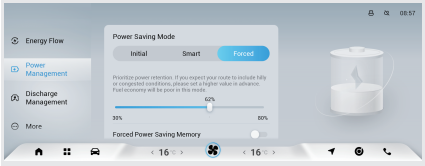
With vehicle in READY state, turn " MODE " knob to pop up the driving mode screen in audio head unit, then manually select the driving mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on, accompanied by voice reminder, to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.

Driving Mode	Description
Normal mode	Combine vehicle power and economy, which is suitable for all kinds of roads.
Eco mode	Improve the fuel economy of the vehicle, which is suitable for the flat and hard roads such as urban roads and paved roads.
Sport mode	Improve vehicle power and realizes higher response speed and driving experience. It is suitable for wide and flat roads with few vehicles (such as motorway).

READ

The adaptive cruise control system in Eco mode provides a gentle acceleration, and the adaptive cruise control system in sport mode provides a faster acceleration.

Power management



OMT26-1022

Power protection mode can be selected in power management screen according to your needs.

It is recommended to select the smart power protection mode, which can achieve a better balance of economy and power.

Power Protection Mode	Description	Common Usage Scenarios
Initial mode	The maximum battery power can be discharged to achieve the maximum pure electric driving mileage.	Suitable for users who drive daily and have charging conditions.
Smart power protection mode	Prioritize the fuel economy, intelligently select the best charging time while driving, and reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving.	Suitable for various usage scenarios, and this mode is recommended.
Forced battery protection mode	Prioritize the battery level holding to get as close as possible to the target battery level, so as to reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving. Fuel economy will deteriorate in this mode.	Suitable for camping and other usage scenarios that require external discharging.

READ

- In non-forced battery protection mode, when vehicle is powered off and then powered on again, it will enter the battery level mode memorized before powering off.
- In forced battery protection mode, different target battery levels can be set based on specific needs, at the same time, you can select whether to memorize the forced battery protection settings. If "Memorized" is selected, it is still the forced power saving next time the power is turned on; If "Not memorized" is selected, it will switch to Smart power saving next time the power is turned on.

Operating mode linkage

Power Mode		Driving Mode	Power Protection Mode		
			Initial mode	Smart power protection mode	Forced battery protection mode
EV mode	EV	Normal mode	√	√	√
		Eco mode	√	√	√
	EV+	Eco mode	√	√	√
HEV mode	HEV	Normal mode	√	√	√
		Eco mode	√	√	√
		Sport mode	√	√	√

Electric mode supports all power saving modes, electric mode (EV mode) does not support the sport mode, and electric mode (EV + mode) does not support the normal mode or sport mode; If sport mode is selected in electric mode, the power mode will automatically switch to HEV mode even if there is no operation in the power mode.

HEV mode supports all driving modes and power saving mode, and switches to electric mode by switching operation; If the switching conditions are not met, it will remain in the HEV mode, and "Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.

Pure electric driving mileage

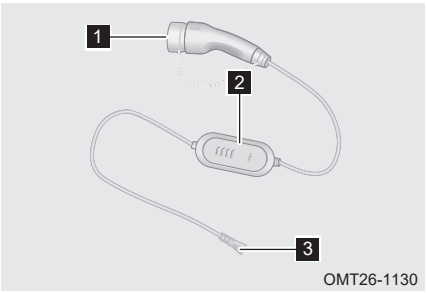
■ Pure electric driving mileage may be affected by the following factors:

1. Driving habits: Frequent acceleration and deceleration or intense driving will result in shorter mileage compared to constant speed driving.
2. Usage of equipment such as air conditioning: Turning on the air conditioning for cooling or heating will result in shorter mileage compared to turning off.
3. Road conditions: Bumpy roads or long uphill roads will result in shorter mileage compared to flat and dry road conditions.
4. Temperature: Available power or driving mileage will decrease as the temperature decreases, and low temperature environments will result in shorter mileage compared to room temperature environments.
5. During actual usage, driving mileage will also show different variations due to weather, roads, congestion and other factors.

Charging Device

External wire harness charging port assembly

External wire harness charging port assembly is a charging device equipped with the vehicle. Connect the vehicle to a socket (220V/20A special AC circuit and three-hole socket) that meets the local national standard to charge the vehicle. Using special AC circuit can prevent short circuit or line trip protection due to high power when charging power battery. If special AC circuit is not used, the normal operation of other devices on the line may be effected.



1 Charging gun

2 Control box

3 Charging plug (Due to market differences, the charging plug style is subject to the actual vehicle)

Dear users, in order for you to reasonably use the on-board AC slow charging gun for safe charging, the following tips are hereby given. Please read them carefully and use them as required.

- Please use the national standard single-phase power supply socket with the specification of AC250V16A, and use copper core conductor with a wire diameter no less than 2.5 mm ² as the socket wiring, and it must be well grounded;
- The front end of power supply socket must be equipped with a leakage protection air switch. The specifications of the leakage protection air switch

are a single-phase rated current of 20 A and a leakage protection threshold of 30 mA;

- It is strictly forbidden to use non-standard power supply equipment such as old socket, universal socket, adapter, adapter cable, modified socket, and grounding Device;
- If the surface of AC slow charging gun or power supply socket is damaged, rusted, blackened, melted, deformed or other abnormalities, please do not charge;
- It is strictly forbidden to soak the entire power supply plug or AC slow charging gun in water. It is strictly forbidden to charge outdoors in rainy and snowy weather or flammable, explosive and other dangerous environments. Do not clean the vehicle while charging;
- When inserting and unplugging the charging plug, please hold the plug or handle, do not pull the wire, and ensure that the plug and jack are inserted in place;
- It is strictly forbidden to unplug the vehicle plug or power supply plug during charging. If there is an emergency, please manually disconnect the leakage protection air switch to cut off the power;
- If charging is stopped when charging does not automatically end, after the power supply socket is manually disconnected or leakage protection air switch on socket cuts off the power supply automatically, manually remove the charging gun.
- When collecting the AC slow charging gun, it is strictly forbidden to throw it away, which will cause product damage. The dust cover must be installed in place after use;
- During charging, if the temperature of the power supply port rises abnormally, please check if the power supply socket is aging and replace the power supply socket in time.

⚠ WARNING

- It must be well grounded during use.
- Never step on, crush, drag or bend the cable.
- When charging is stopped, unplug the charging gun first and then power supply plug.
- Never use adapter cable or adapter, and never plug and unplug with power on.
- Do not disassemble and maintain without permission, otherwise the results are at your own risk.
- When not in use, insert vehicle plug dust cover completely.
- Never expose the product to flammable gas to avoid danger.
- Make sure that charging port is dry and free of foreign matters to avoid short circuit that may cause fire.
- This product is only used when the power supply is equipped with RCD short-circuit protector.
- Never destroy the product violently, drop it or place heavy objects on the product surface.
- When using this product, confirm that the plug is tightly inserted and the indicator is normal.
- This product is only used for applicable model, and should not be used in other vehicles to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- When starting vehicle, it is necessary to confirm that charging gun has been unplugged completely, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
- Never put this product in water, liquid or snow and rain. Avoid plugging or unplugging the plug with wet hands to avoid personal injuries.
- The operating temperature is -30℃-＋50℃. Never put the product near high-temperature objects or expose it to sunlight.
- Be sure to use genuine charging cable. If other charging cables are used, the power battery may not be charged normally and cause malfunction.
- If this product cannot charge normally, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.

Control box indicators

Operating/ Malfunctioning Condition	Power Indicator (Green)	Charging Indicator (Red)	Malfunction Indicator (Red)	Charging Completion Indicator (Green)
Initial state	Remain on	Flash once	Flash once	Flash once
Waiting for charging mode	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Turn off
Normal charging mode	Remain on	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off
Charging completed	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Remain on
Self-checking	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Turn off
Communication malfunction	Remain on	Remain on	Flash	Turn off
Input voltage overvoltage/ undervoltage	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Turn off
Grounded malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Flash
Overcurrent malfunction	Remain on	Flash	Remain on	Turn off
Leakage malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Flash
Over temperature protection	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on

⚠ CAUTION
Do not attempt to remove or repair control box. If above malfunctions occur, please go to authorized service station.

Troubleshooting common malfunctions

■ Unable to charge

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if it is grounded well.
3. Check if voltage of power supply is normal.
4. Check if connection of vehicle is normal.

■ Intermittent charging

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if 220 V AC is stable.
3. Check if temperature is too high.

■ Power on trip during charging

1. Check if it is grounded well.
2. Check if device is short circuit.
3. Check if total power of all electric equipment is too high.

■ Malfunction occurs each time power on when charging

Unplug three-pin plug and charging gun, then insert and unplug them again. If malfunction still occurs, please go to authorized service station immediately.

Charging Method

Inspection before charging

■ If any of the following conditions occur, charging is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

1. When the connection of discharging device is loose, do not perform charging.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the charging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

READ

- The vehicle cannot be charged while the software is being upgraded.
- The vehicle must be in a parked state before charging.
- Do not forcibly open the charging port cover if it is not unlocked.
- Please carefully read and follow the usage instructions and precautions related to the charging device.
- If vehicle is charged in a high or low temperature environment, charging power will be reduced and charging time will be prolonged.
- Both AC and DC charging can be performed in any power mode. However, for safety, it is recommended to turn off the vehicle before charging.
- When the temperature of power battery is low, it may not charge at full power during the initial stages of charging. As the battery temperature increases during charging, the charging power will increase.

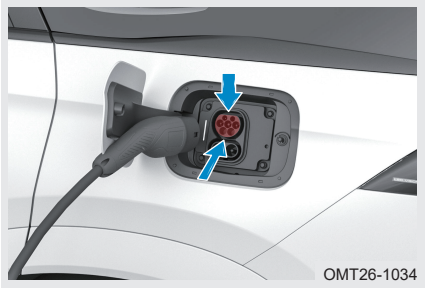
AC charging (slow charging)


OMT26-1031

Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Select charge now under charging/discharging management in energy center setting screen to switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;


OMT26-1034

Step 4: Remove the charging gun from AC charging pile, insert the charging gun to the AC charging port until a light sound is heard;

Step 5: After charging is completed, press the vehicle to unlock, and pull out the charging gun from the charging port;

Step 6: Close protection covers of AC charging port and charging gun, and then close charging port cap;

Step 7: Unplug charging plug from power supply socket.

READ
Unplug the charging gun first and then power supply plug.

CAUTION
• AC charging gun must be equipped with leakage protection and temperature monitoring devices, with a current limit of 230 V/10 A/50 Hz. • For a better power experience during towing, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in advance before towing so that the SOC is 50% or more.

DC charging (fast charging)

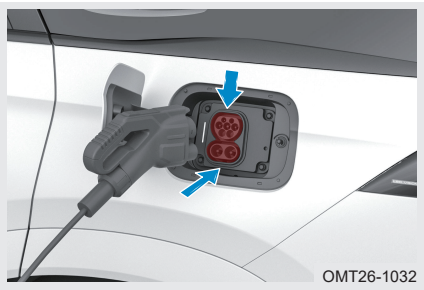


OMT26-1033

Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Select charge now under charging/discharging management in new energy setting screen to switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;



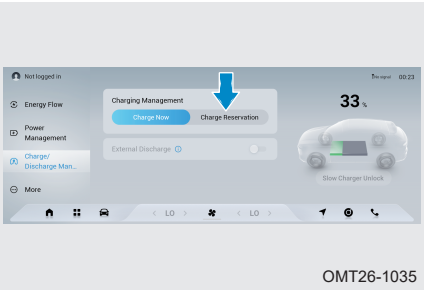
OMT26-1032

Step 4: Remove special charging gun from charging pile, unplug dust cover of charging port, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard;

Step 5: After the charging is complete, pull out the charging gun from charging port;

Step 6: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

Appointment Charging

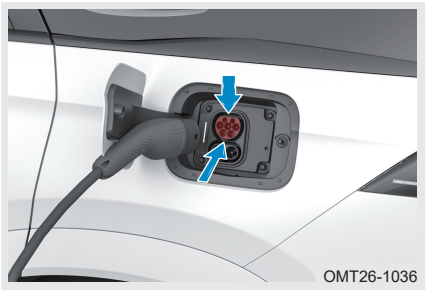


OMT26-1035

Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Select Charge Reservation under Charging/Discharging Management in Energy Center Setting screen and set the start time and charging time, then switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

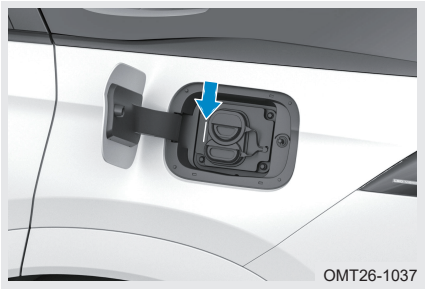


Step 4: Unplug dust covers of AC charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard. After the appointed time is reached, charging will be started;

Step 5: After the charging is complete, pull out the charging gun from charging port;

Step 6: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

Charging indicator



The indicator light strip is located inside the charging port cover.

- Waiting for charging: Indicator remains on in yellow, indicating that charger is connected, there is no charging current output.
- Charging: Indicator blinks in green, indicating that it is charging.
- Charging end: Indicator remains on in green, indicating that charging is completed and charging gun is not pulled.
- Charging malfunction: Indicator remains on in red, indicating that malfunction occurs.
- Waiting for discharging/discharging end: Indicator remains on in blue, indicating that discharging gun is connected, and it is waiting for discharging.
- Discharging: Indicator blinks in blue, indicating that it is discharging.
- Lighting: Indicator remains on in white, indicating that charging gun is not connected, charging port box cover is open when the network is awake, indicator comes on for 30 seconds when ambient light collects a signal that ambient light is dark.

⚠ CAUTION

- After DC fast charging is completed, unplug the charging gun in time.
- After charging with a portable AC charging device is completed, unplug the charging gun end first, and then unplug the connector at power supply end.
- With vehicle powered off, if front compartment cover is not fully closed after being opened, charge now, charge reservation, and appointment trip functions will not operate properly.
- It is recommended to use portable AC charging device (220 V, 50 Hz, 8 A) provided with vehicle or AC charging pile (220 V, 50 Hz, 32 A) with recommended specification.
- During charging, ensure that vehicle is properly connected to the power supply end, and do not unplug the charging gun.
- During charging, the charging gun will be locked automatically. With charging not completed/stopped: If vehicle is in the armed state, press the unlock button on smart key twice continuously to unlock the charging gun and stop charging; if vehicle is in the disarming state, stop the charging power output or click Slow Charger Unlock on Charging/Discharging Management of Energy Center Setting screen to unlock the charging gun. After charging is completed: If vehicle is in the disarming state, charging gun will unlock automatically; if vehicle is in the armed state, charging gun will remain be locked, and can only be unlocked after disarming. The charging gun can only be unplugged after it is unlocked. Never operate it forcibly.

⚠ WARNING

It is strictly forbidden to use AC/DC adapter for charging, as it will cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

AC Charging Socket Electronic Lock

The vehicle AC charging socket is equipped with an electronic lock function, which prevents the charging gun from being plugged in and pulled out with electricity, and avoids charging safety problems.

■ Locking of electronic lock

Use 32A AC charging pile that meets the national standard for charging. After the charging gun is inserted in place and after the electronic lock is automatically locked, the vehicle will start charging.

⚠ WARNING

After the electronic lock is locked, if you need to remove the charging gun, please unlock the electronic lock before pulling out the gun; Do not pull the gun forcibly, so as not to damage the electronic lock or charging gun and other charging equipment.

■ Unlocking of electronic lock

Normal electronic lock unlocking is divided into the following two ways:

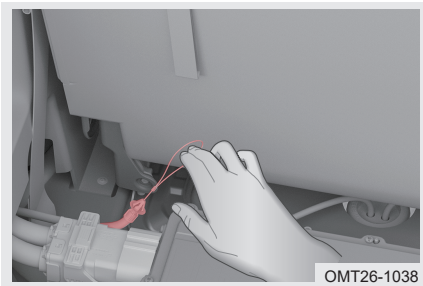
1. Press the lock button on smart key first, then press the unlock button on it to unlock the electronic lock, and gently press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun to pull out the charging gun.
2. Without using the smart key, hold the charging gun by your hand and press the button on the charging gun with your thumb. When you hear the electronic lock unlocking sound, first lift your thumb, and then quickly press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun again to pull out the charging gun.

READ

- If the charging gun is not pulled out after the electronic lock is unlocked, the electronic lock will be automatically relocked after several seconds.
- If the vehicle is in the unlocked state and the electronic lock is in the locked state, it is necessary to close the door and lock the vehicle before performing above electronic lock unlocking operation.

If the above unlocking method is invalid, emergency unlocking can be performed by cutting off the power supply of the charging device (for example, click stop charging on APP interface, turn off the power supply of the charging pile, press the emergency stop switch of charging pile).

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging)



When abnormal lock fault occurs in electronic lock of the charging gun or discharging gun, the charging gun and discharging gun can be manually unlocked with electronic lock cable.

Step 1: Make sure that the vehicle is not charged/discharged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;

Step 2: Open the back door, lift left luggage compartment protector flip cover;

Step 3: Pull the electronic lock cable to manually unlock the charging gun and discharging gun.

⚠ WARNING

- The electronic lock cable can only be used when charging gun or discharging gun cannot be unlocked from charging port by conventional methods. Continuous use may cause damage to electronic lock cable or charging device.
- Do not try to unlock charging gun while pulling electronic lock cable. Be sure to pull electronic lock cable before trying to unplug charging gun from charging port. Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries.
- Do not perform this operation when charging vehicle or any orange high voltage cable is exposed; Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries or vehicle damage; If you are not sure how to perform operation safely, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

Charging Precautions

Charging precautions on rainy days

1. When charging in rain, please take care to protect the charging device from water ingress.
2. It is strictly prohibited to charge outdoors in extreme weather conditions such as heavy rain, typhoons, hail, etc., that exceed national standards, as this may result in charging not being able to be carried out, and even cause damage to the vehicle or charging device.
3. When charging is required after a rain shower, please confirm whether there is water entering the charging port at first. Do not charge when there are

obvious water stains in the charging port, as this may result in failure to charge, in severe cases, damage to the vehicle or charging device.

Precautions for end of charging

■ Manually stop charging

1. Stop charging at first, and ensure that the electronic lock is unlocked.
2. Hold the charging gun, and press and hold the button on charging gun to unplug it.
3. For AC charging, do not forcibly unplug the charging gun when electronic lock is locked, as this may damage the charging port.
4. For DC charging, never forcibly unplug the charging gun before stopping charging, as this may damage the charging port and pose a risk of electric shock.
5. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
6. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

■ Automatically stop charging

1. After charging is completed, please unlock first, and then unplug the charging plug.
2. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
3. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

The charging performance of vehicle is affected when the battery temperature is too low or too high

1. If the charging port cover or charging gun is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not open the charging port cover or unplug the charging gun forcibly.
2. When charging at low temperature, the battery thermal management system will be in operation, but the charging time will be extended and the heating power consumption will increase, which is normal.
3. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that users perform charging in a heated room.

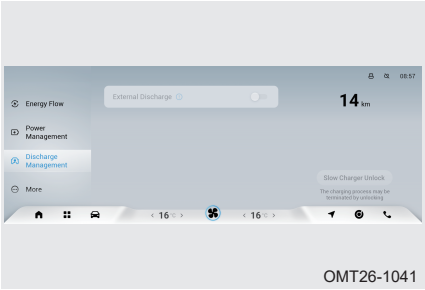
4. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that you charge immediately after using the vehicle, as the battery temperature will be relatively high at this time, resulting in better charging performance.
5. In southern regions with high temperature, it is recommended that users charge in a cool and ventilated place, and do not charge in direct sunlight or in air.

Safety Warning for Charging

1. Never use unqualified products.
2. Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
3. Before driving, please ensure that the charging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.
4. Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
5. After an external charging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.
6. It is strictly prohibited to operate with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of charging port or charging stand, as this may cause electric shock and personal injury.
7. Please charge in a relatively safe environment (e. g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
8. To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the charging gun when charging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During charging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
9. It is forbidden for minors to perform charging operations or touch and use charging device. Charging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when charging.
10. During charging, if vehicle or charging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop charging immediately and contact the authorized service station.
11. If you want to use any medical device in vehicle (such as cardiovascular defibrillator implanted in the body), confirm with the manufacturer whether charging effects normal operation of the device before use, otherwise it may cause abnormal operation of device and series personal injuries.

External Discharging Function (If Equipped)

The external discharging function uses new energy vehicles as a power supply. Through the external discharging device, it can draw power and discharge externally, meeting the voltage requirements of general household appliances. It can be used for outdoor camping, barbecue, cooking, and other scenarios, satisfying your power needs outdoors.



OMT26-1041

With vehicle in READY state, turn External Discharge to on/off under charging/discharging management in new energy setting screen. Before unplugging the discharging gun, it is necessary to turn External Discharge to OFF.

READ

External discharging device shall be purchased seperately. For details, please consult the authorized service station.

External Discharging Method

Inspection before external discharging

■ If any of the following conditions occur, external discharging operation is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

1. External discharging operation is prohibited if the connection of the external discharging device is loose.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the AC charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the external discharging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

External discharging operation

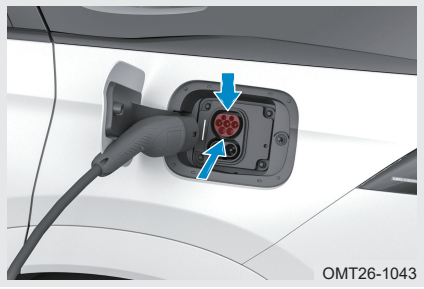

OMT26-1042

Step 1: Park vehicle in a safe area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Turn external discharge to ON under charging/discharging management in new energy setting screen, switch the power supply to any mode, disarm the vehicle while ensuring sufficient battery and fuel levels;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

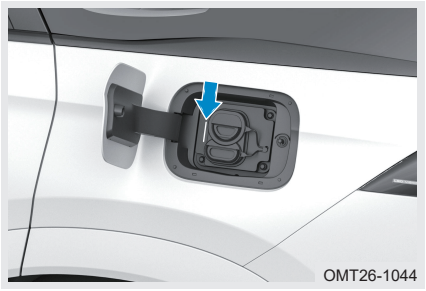
Step 4: Unplug dust covers of AC charging port and discharging gun, and insert discharging gun into AC charging port until a slight sound is heard;


OMT26-1043

Step 5: Press the switch button on power strip and wait for red indicator to remain on, which indicates that the external discharging device is successfully connected; after the external discharging device is successfully connected, the vehicle starts to discharge, and the vehicle displays the discharge information;

Step 6: After external discharging is completed, disconnect the external electrical appliance; after vehicle is switched to READY, turn External Discharge to OFF under charging/discharging management in new energy setting screen; long press the upper button of the discharging gun to unplug the discharging gun from AC charging port.

Discharging indicator



The indicator light strip is located inside the charging port cover.

Remains on in white: Under dim light conditions, charging port cover is open, and no discharging gun is inserted.

Remains on in red: Fault indication.

Flashes in blue: It is being discharged.

Remains on in blue: Waiting for discharge.

READ

- When inserting DC charging gun, the external discharging function is not available.
- Before external discharging, please make sure that battery and fuel are sufficient, otherwise the external discharging function may not operate properly.
- During external discharging, the cumulative power of the external electrical appliances cannot exceed 6.6 kW, otherwise the external discharging function will stop operating.
- Turn the vehicle power to ON mode, if power battery is low during external discharging, the engine will automatically start to charge the power battery, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When vehicle is powered off and connected to external electrical appliances without output for a long time, the static power consumption of vehicle will increase. It is recommended that you unplug the discharging gun when not using the external electrical appliances.

⚠ WARNING

- Store external discharging device in a cool and dry place when not using it.
- Avoid vehicle crushing, falling, and stepping on external discharging device on purpose when using.
- Never contact metal terminals of the vehicle charging port and power strip during discharging.
- Never fall the external discharging device or pull the cable directly to move the external discharging device. Handle it gently when moving it.
- During external discharging, never place external electrical appliances in luggage compartment, under the front of vehicle or near tire.
- During external discharging, if there are abnormal conditions (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop using the external discharging function immediately.
- Never use the external discharging device under any damage conditions such as disconnection, breakage, cable wear, loose connection, exposed metal surface, etc.

Discharging Precautions

1. Ensure that the standard plug matches the specification of the product's power strip before use.
2. Never contact metal terminals of the discharging power strip or vehicle charging port when discharging.
3. During use, never drag the wire forcibly to avoid tension or squeezing.
4. When gun head and socket are separated and not in use temporarily, they should be covered with protective covers or properly protected.
5. Do not use the power strip if its surface is damaged, rusty, broken, or the connection is loose.
6. If gun head is dirty or damp, please cut off the power supply first, and then use a dry and clean cloth to wipe the gun head, and ensure that the discharging gun head is clean.
7. Before use, please ensure that there are no abnormalities such as damage on the surface of discharging gun, cable, and discharging power strip in the discharging device.

Safety Warning for Discharging

1. Never use unqualified products.
2. Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
3. Before driving, please ensure that the discharging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.

4. Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
5. After an external discharging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.
6. It is strictly prohibited to operate with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of charging port or charging stand, as this may cause electric shock and personal injury.
7. Please discharge in a relatively safe environment (e. g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
8. To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the discharging gun when discharging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During discharging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
9. It is forbidden for minors to perform discharging operations or touch and use discharging device. Discharging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when discharging.
10. During discharging, if vehicle or discharging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop discharging immediately and contact the authorized service station.

Pedestrian Reminder System

When vehicle is driving at low speed, the pedestrian reminder system can send a prompt sound to warn pedestrians and other vehicles, so as to enhance driving safety.

Each time vehicle is started, pedestrian protection sound will be turned on by default.

When vehicle moves forward (speed is not higher than 30 km/h) or reverses, pedestrian prompt system will sound a prompt sound to remind pedestrians and other vehicles; Whether the vehicle is moving forward or reversing, the pedestrian reminder system stops working when the speed is higher than 30 km/h.

⚠ WARNING

Do not turn off pedestrian protection sound in places where there are pedestrians. Otherwise, if pedestrians do not hear prompt sound of sound prompt system and do not notice approach of vehicles, serious personal injury may be caused.

5-11. Data Privacy

Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. (hereinafter referred to as "we" or "us") is the manufacturer responsible for privacy by design (PbD) of your vehicle.

Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)

Our vehicle's Driver Drowsiness Alert Warning (DDAW) system works to detect signs of driver fatigue. It does this by monitoring a range of parameters within a recent time window, including the proportion of time your eyes are open, blink rate, direction of gaze, length of gaze, yawning, as well as vehicular parameters such as speed, gear position, car door status, steering wheel angle, and direction of turn. The system uses this information to make a comprehensive judgement about driver fatigue and issue alerts as necessary.

⚠ CAUTION

Please be aware that the data collected by the DDAW system is required by regulations, collected for immediate processing, and is not stored. According to the regulations, DDAW will be enabled by default. The collected data is used for algorithmic recognition and discarded immediately after use. All data is processed within the vehicle and does not leave the vehicle.

Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)

In order to implement the drive assistance function, the car side will use the vehicle's front, flanks, and rear cameras to collect image data on the road during driving or after parking, image data surrounding the vehicle to complete drive assistance function. The camera recordings use the vehicle's external cameras to learn how to recognize things like lane lines, street signs and parking signs and traffic light.

⚠ CAUTION

Please be aware that the processing data within our system is designed for immediate use and analysis. We do not store any of the data that is processed. This data is necessary for legitimate interests and also to fulfil legal and other official requirements.

Emergency call (eCall)

In the event when you are in a traffic accident or you press the SOS button for roadside assistance, the eCall system on the in-vehicle terminal will provide your vehicle location, contact information and additional required information to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) which is set up by government authority. The collection and sharing of these data comply with the requirements of laws and regulations, which only includes GPS, speed, directions of your vehicle, the time when you trigger the eCall, the eCall status, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), vehicle model, power type and Recorded voice data.

⚠ CAUTION
We collect this data to fulfil our legal obligations outlined in vehicle security regulations.

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Emergency Call Function 252

Hazard Light..... 252

Reflective Vest..... 253

Warning Triangle..... 253

Spare Tools..... 254

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

Flat Tire 254

Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High ... 258

6-3. Towing

Towing Vehicle..... 258

Emergency Towing Vehicle 259

Installing Towing Eyelet..... 260

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box 261

Checking Fuse..... 263

Replacing Fuse..... 263

6-5. If Battery is Depleted

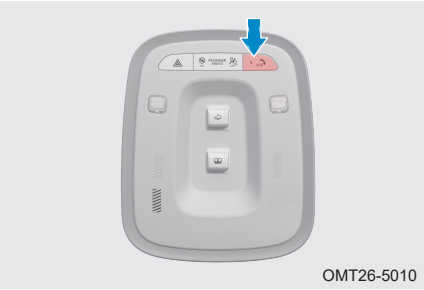
Removing Battery 264

Jump-starting 265

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Emergency Call Function

ECALL


OMT26-5010

ECALL is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

READ

- In order to ensure vehicle emergency rescue function works properly, focus on and renew the payment timely.
- When vehicle enters underground garage or travels on roads under intense electromagnetic interference (signal may be relatively poor), the function may not operate properly.

Hazard Light


OMT26-5012

Press hazard light switch to turn on hazard light (turn signal lights flash); Press it again to turn off hazard light.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., please turn on the hazard lights to warn other vehicles, so as to avoid the secondary accident.

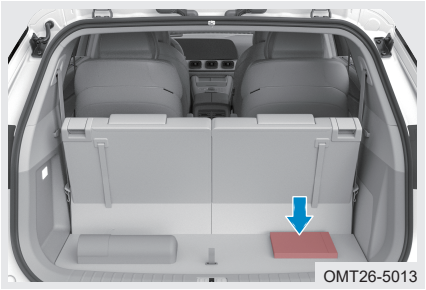
READ

- The hazard lights are automatically activated when the airbag is operating.
- The hazard lights can still work when the vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.

Emergency braking alarm function

When brake pedal is depressed in emergency and deceleration is greater at medium and high speed, turn signal lights flash quickly. When brake pedal is released, hazard light switch is pressed or vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, turn signal lights stop flashing.

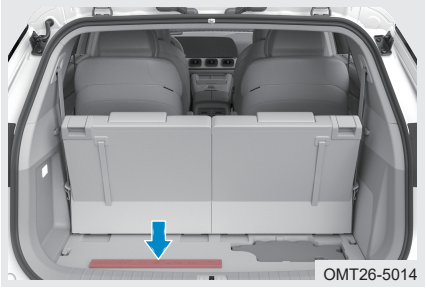
Reflective Vest


OMT26-5013

Reflective vest is located in the luggage compartment.

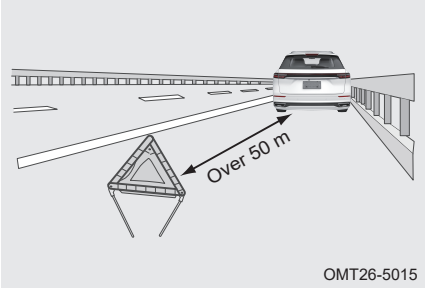
In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. It can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

Warning Triangle


OMT26-5014

Warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.



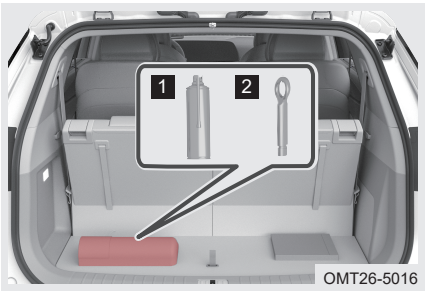
OMT26-5015

On a normal road, place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 50 m behind the vehicle.

On the highway, place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 150 m behind the vehicle.

In rain or when steering, place the warning triangle at a distance of over 150 m behind the vehicle.

Spare Tools



1 Automatic inflation tire repair liquid
2 Towing eyelet

READ

Some models are equipped with tire pressure gauge, fire extinguisher and first-aid packet.

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

1. Preparations before using automatic inflation tire repair liquid.

Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P;

Step 3: Switch vehicle to power off state, and turn on hazard light;

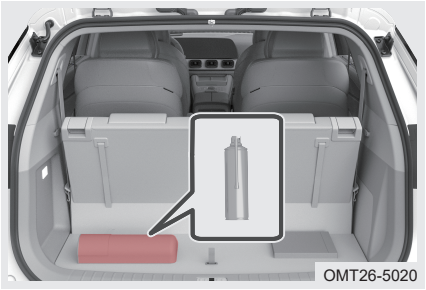
Step 4: Have everyone get out of vehicle, pull over and stay away from traffic;

Step 5: Wear reflective vest, and place the warning triangle at a distance of 50 m - 150 m behind the vehicle (depending on actual condition).

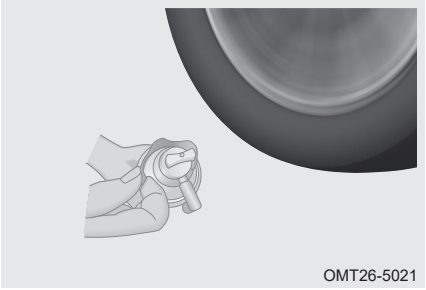
CAUTION

Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance can damage the tire beyond repair.

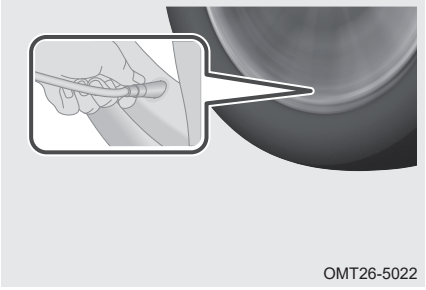
2. Use the automatic inflation tire repair liquid.


OMT26-5020

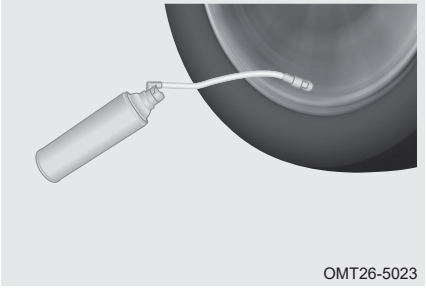
Step 1: Open back door, take out the automatic inflation tire repair liquid from luggage compartment;


OMT26-5021

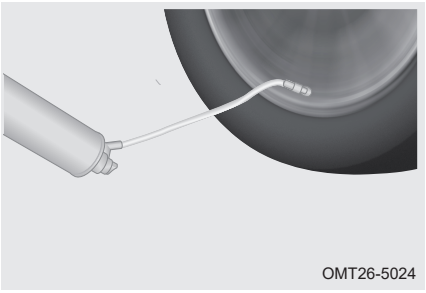
Step 2: Shake the automatic tire filler well before use, and then tear off the safety belt of the junction valve;


OMT26-5022

Step 3: Tighten the junction valve of the automatic inflation tire repair liquid to the tire valve;


OMT26-5023

Step 4: Turn the red valve clockwise and place the bottle upside down to start inflating the tire;


OMT26-5024

Step 5: After the automatic inflation tire repair liquid is filled, close the valve counterclockwise and screw out the junction valve, drive for 10 km or more immediately to complete the repair, then go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair or replacement as soon as possible.

Note: After using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, the vehicle will be supported to be driven continuously for 500 km or more. For the first 10 km, please drive at a speed of less than 80 km/h. After 10 km, drive the vehicle at normal speed. It is recommended to go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair or replacement as soon as possible.

READ

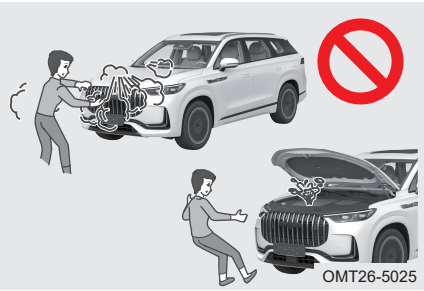
- Before using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, please check the validity period indicated on the automatic inflation tire repair liquid tank to ensure that it is used within the validity period.
- The automatic inflation tire repair liquid is a disposable consumable (for one wheel only), and you can buy it at authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- Avoid the automatic inflation tire repair liquid contacting with the skin or eyes and keep it out of the reach of children.
- If you continue to drive the vehicle in the case of tire puncture and air leakage, it is easy to cause tire blowout, endangering personal safety.
- The automatic inflation tire repair liquid is used for repairing tread puncture repair, other parts such as shoulder, sidewall and valve nozzle damage are not in the scope of repair.
- When it is required to pull out the puncture object before repairing, make sure to move the vehicle slightly so that the puncture hole is facing downward at 6 o'clock position before filling the tire with automatic inflation tire repair liquid.
- If the automatic inflation tire repair liquid splashes onto the tire or rim during use, wash it with clean water or wipe it with cloth; if the liquid accidentally gets into your eyes, please wash with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.
- When the product is used in ambient temperature (-40 ℃ - 0 ℃), please warm up the product to 0 ° C or more at the heater in the vehicle to increase the filling efficiency of the automatic inflation tire repair liquid.
- It is effective to repair the puncture diameter of 6 mm or less, in which the puncture object can be pulled out for repair; when the puncture diameter is more than 6 mm, please contact authorized service station immediately.
- After using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, drive the vehicle for 10 km or more immediately without stopping, and go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair or replacement as soon as possible.
- The storage temperature of automatic inflation tire repair liquid is -40 °C - 70 °C. It is forbidden to store in the vehicle under direct sunlight; and it is forbidden to contact with open fire; please be sure to store it in the tool box securely according to the requirements, do not put it in the cabin.

Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High

If the engine coolant temperature is high during driving, and engine coolant temperature gauge approaches H area or " " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.



Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P;

Step 3: Turn off A/C system (water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal);

Step 4: Switch vehicle to power off state after idling for several minutes, turn on hazard light;

Step 5: Before opening the hood, check whether there is steam or coolant overflow or leakage. Only open the hood when there is no steam or coolant overflow or leakage, otherwise, burns may occur;

Step 6: Check the coolant level, if the cause cannot be determined, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair.

⚠ CAUTION

- If engine overheats frequently, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the coolant level is low, pure water can be used temporarily, please go to authorized service station to replace coolant as soon as possible.

6-3. Towing

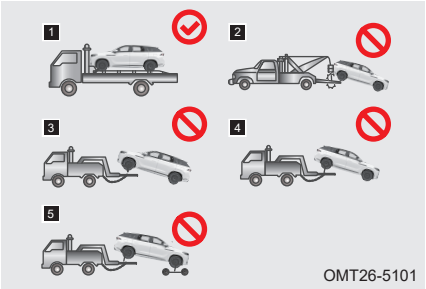
Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service station or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

⚠ WARNING

- Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty.
- To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly.
- Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use 1 platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method 2 3 4 5 shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

⚠ WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.

Emergency Towing Vehicle

If flatbed truck is not available during towing, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced road for short distances at low speed.

When using towing hook, driver must be in towed vehicle to operate steering wheel and brake pedal, and vehicle's wheels, drive train, axle, steering system and braking system must be in good condition.

Before emergency towing of vehicle, switch vehicle power to ACC/ON mode, release parking brake (refer to "Brake System" section for details), and shift the shift lever to N.

⚠ CAUTION

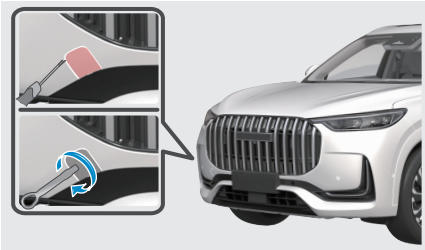
- Do not perform emergency towing for long periods of time.
- Never tow a vehicle heavier than this vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- Secure a towing cable, chain or lever to the vehicle towing eyelet.
- Both drivers must be familiar with the towing process, otherwise they cannot carry out towing work.
- Tow vehicle as straightly ahead as possible, do not tow vehicle from side to avoid damaging vehicle.
- If engine is not started, assist system will not work, therefore, braking and steering will be more difficult than usual. Operate carefully.
- For towing of A/T models, we strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at a authorized service station.
- If towed vehicle still cannot move, do not forcibly continue towing to avoid secondary damage to vehicle. We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at a authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, people other than driver should stay away from the vehicle when it is towed.
- When towing vehicle, avoid sudden starting or erratic driving maneuvers, doing so would apply excessive force on the towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever. The towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever may break and cause vehicle damage or serious personal injury.

Installing Towing Eyelet

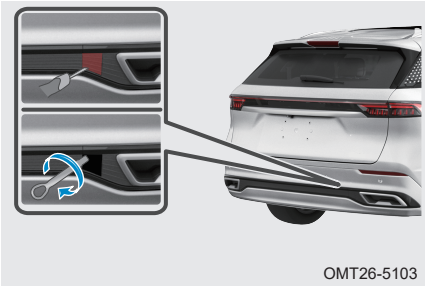
Front towing eyelet


OMT26-5102

Step 1: Use a flat head screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the front towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

Rear towing eyelet


OMT26-5103

Step 1: Use a flat head screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the rear towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

⚠ CAUTION

- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.
- Towing rope or towing bar can be installed only when towing eyelet is installed in place.

⚠ WARNING

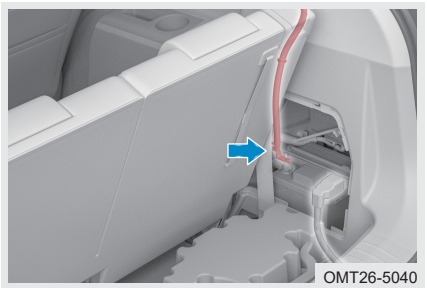
Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may become loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box

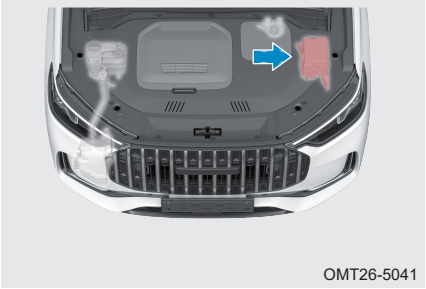
Fuses are used to protect electrical components and circuits to avoid short circuit or overload. If fuse is blown, the protected components and systems will not work properly.

Front compartment fuse box


OMT26-5040

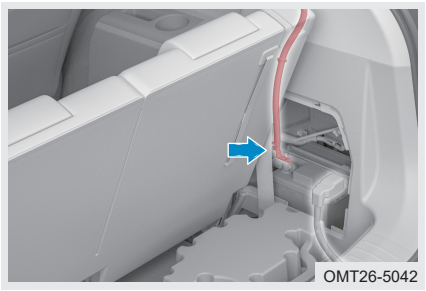
Step 1: Click " OFF " button on quick menu to switch vehicle to power-off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, lift right luggage compartment protector flip cover, disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable;


OMT26-5041

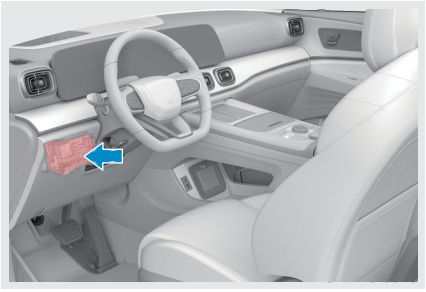
Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover to inspect or replace fuse.

Instrument panel fuse box


OMT26-5042

Step 1: Click " OFF " button on quick menu to switch vehicle to power-off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, lift right luggage compartment protector flip cover, disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable;

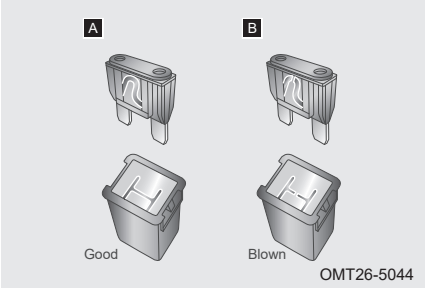


Step 3: Remove instrument panel lower left protector to inspect or replace fuse.

READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay layout.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as moisture may damage the electrical system.
- To prevent damage, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel lower left protector. Please contact authorized service station as necessary.

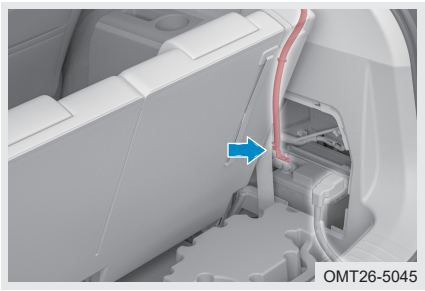
Checking Fuse



A Good fuse.

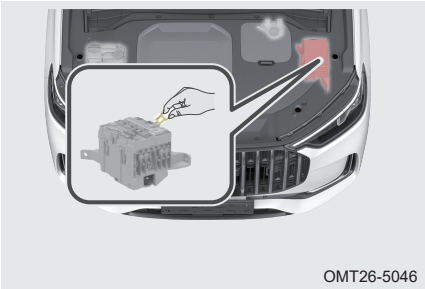
B Blown fuse.

Replacing Fuse



Step 1: Click " OFF " button on quick menu to switch vehicle to power-off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, lift right luggage compartment protector flip cover, disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable;



Step 3: Check fuses according to the fuse and relay layout, remove the suspected fuse out by a fuse remover;

Step 4: Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating. You can see the amperage rating on the schematic diagram inside the fuse box cover.

READ

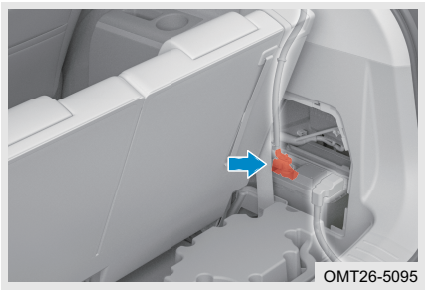
If the spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances in case of emergency. It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not modify fuse or fuse box, otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.
- Only install a fuse that has the same amperage rating as used one. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.

6-5. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery


OMT26-5095

The following steps must be followed when removing and installing the battery:

1. Turn off all the electrical appliances, and power off the vehicle;
2. Open the luggage compartment, remove the right protector;
3. Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;
4. Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;
5. Remove the battery holder and the battery;
6. Install a new battery that has same specification as used one. Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removal.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

The used battery contains sulfuric acid and lead and should not be disposed at will. Please handle according to the local laws and regulations or discard at a local qualified waste disposal station.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both electrodes of the battery at the same time or touching the positive electrode and the vehicle body at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or open flames near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery acid is strongly corrosive. Do not lean on the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (soap), and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Jump-starting

To avoid vehicle damage or personal injury due to improper operation, if you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at an authorized service station.

⚠ CAUTION

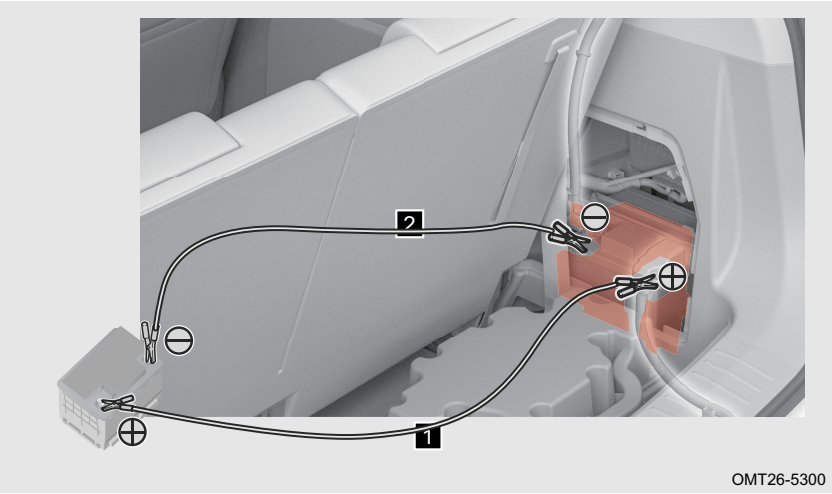
Battery voltage used for jump starting should be 12 - 13 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage is correct.

⚠ WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Do not use cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Jump-starting procedures

1. Turn off all unnecessary electrical appliances. If booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure of no contact between vehicles.
2. Connect cables in order shown in illustration below.



1 Connect positive (+) terminal of discharged battery to positive (+) terminal of supporting vehicle battery with positive cable.

2 Connect negative (-) terminal of discharged battery to negative (-) terminal of supporting vehicle battery with negative cable.

3. Start engine in normal way. After starting, run it for several minutes by lightly depressing accelerator pedal.
4. Disconnect cables in reverse order of connecting (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

⚠ CAUTION

- During connecting, do not shift to D position to ensure that the vehicle is in the parking state.
- Do not lean on the battery when connecting.
- Never allow the clamps of the jumper cables to contact with each other or touch other metal parts of the vehicle.
- Do not connect cable to or near any part that moves when engine cranks.
- If the first starting attempt is not successful, check that if clamps on jumper cables are tight and restart the engine in normal way. If it still cannot start, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance ... 268

Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 268

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information..... 269

Safety Check..... 269

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance 270

Checking Oil Level 271

Checking transmission fluid level 272

Checking Brake Fluid Level..... 272

Checking Coolant Level 273

Checking Radiator and Condenser 274

Checking Tires..... 274

Tire Rotation..... 276

Checking Battery..... 276

Checking Air Conditioning Filter 276

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 277

Checking Wiper Blade 277

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information..... 279

Maintenance Schedule 280

Technical Data..... 287

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

There are two types of repair and maintenance: One is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; The other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by authorized service station.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to find and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Scheduled maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the recommended fluid, or your vehicle may be damaged.

Authorized Service Station is at Your Service

Authorized service station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. We only supplies OEM parts to authorized service station located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts from authorized service station can be used.

Authorized service station offers a professional service. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service station knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to complete the job to the highest standard.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tires should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or after consultation with manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or disposed of into the communal drainage system.

Service arrangements

When go to authorized service station for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provide valuable reference information.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information

The vehicle Identification code information can be readout by installing the malfunction diagnosis device, used for inspections and maintenance.

Do not install electrical components other than the diagnosis device to the connector. Doing so may cause unexpected problems to occur, such as having a bad effect on electronics or damaging the battery.

Safety Check

It is better to perform a safety check before driving vehicle, which will improve your driving safety and enjoyment.

⚠ WARNING
While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

Daily check
Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/hood/back door/glass is damaged.
Check that engine oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.
Check cold tire pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc.). Also check the spare tire.
Check whether seat belt buckles fasten securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
Check whether lighting of lights is normal.
Check whether meter indicators are normal.

Monthly check
Clean vehicle surface, inside of hood (dust on surface of radiator and condenser, and remaining oil of engine body), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.
Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that no water/oil leakage has occurred.
Check whether air condition is operating properly.

Check whether parking brake is operating properly.
Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

READ
Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tires can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not permitted to dispose of them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures provided in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by customers. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

⚠ CAUTION

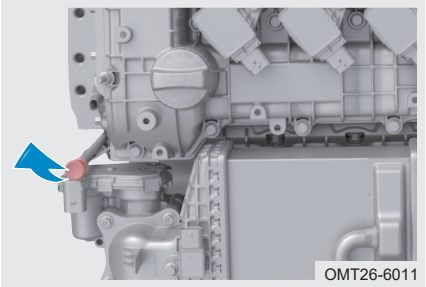
- Check for any tools or cloths that may have been left behind before closing the hood.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive engine wear could occur.
- Correctly add fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the vehicle power is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent any loose clothing from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because the cooling fan may automatically start and run at any time.

Checking Oil Level

Checking engine oil


OMT26-6011

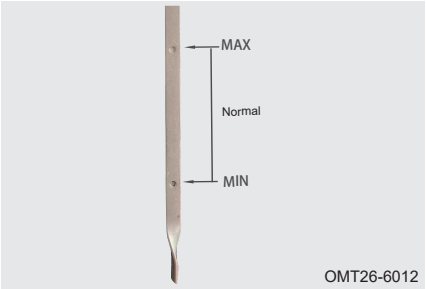
With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.

Step 1: Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait about 5 minutes after turning off engine;

Step 2: Open the hood, pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean cloth;

Step 3: Insert the dipstick to the bottom uniformly and slowly;

Step 4: Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull out the dipstick again and check if oil level is proper.

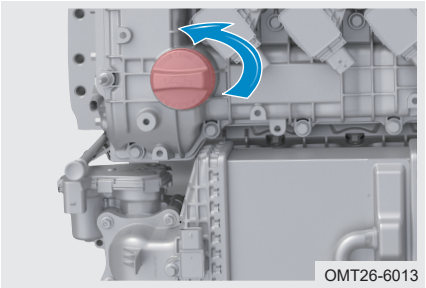


OMT26-6012

Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

Adding engine oil


OMT26-6013

Step 1: Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it;

Step 2: Use the funnel to add a small amount of engine oil for several times and check the oil level with a dipstick again;

Step 3: When the level is within the proper range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in household waste, down the drain or spill on to the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please dispose it according to the local regulations regarding environmental protection.

CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- Only use the engine oil recommended by company. Other specifications of engine oil may damage the related vehicle systems.
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during refueling, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be placed up side down after removal to prevent misjudgment caused by oil backflow, and prevent oil flowed through seal ring from overflowing by itself after assembly again, which results in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.

Checking transmission fluid level

Checking, adding and replacing of transmission fluid should be done by professionals. Please contact the authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level



Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

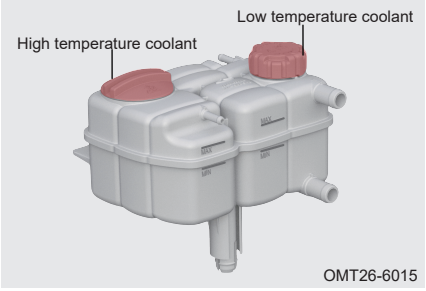
- As the brake fluid is highly absorbent, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only use the brake fluid recommended by company. Other specifications of brake fluid may damage the related vehicle systems and cause personal injury.
- If brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level

Checking coolant



The coolant level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks when engine is cold. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add coolant and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- Adding and replacing of coolant should be done by professionals. Please contact the authorized service station.
- Only use the coolant recommended by company. Other specifications of coolant may damage the related vehicle systems.

⚠ WARNING

- During vehicle running and for a period of time after running, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, do not open the coolant reservoir cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.
- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the liquid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets onto your skin or into eyes, wash it off with a great amount of water, and seek immediate medical attention if necessary.

Checking Radiator and Condenser

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioning and cooling system, resulting in air conditioning operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at that time.

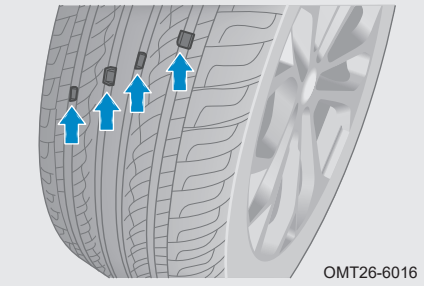
Condenser: With engine turned off and cooled down, clean the condenser by blowing compressed air from rear to front through the radiator.

Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface every year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant; Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury. Clean radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

Checking Tires

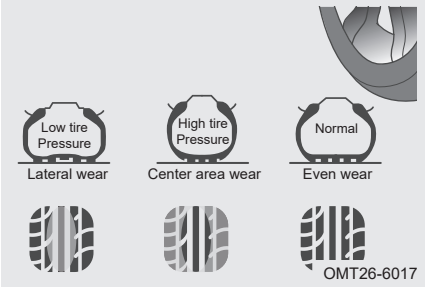


Check the tire tread for tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, it indicates that performance and safety of tire seriously decrease, and replacement is necessary.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Always discard a used tire carefully. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

■ Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death:

1. Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle.
2. Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear.
3. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
4. Do not mix tires from different manufacturers, of different models or tread patterns.
5. Do not mix differently constructed tires (such as: radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
6. Speedometer is affected by tire size. If the tire size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty.



Incorrect tire inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tire service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tire pressure (For provisions about the tire inflation pressure, please refer to the tire pressure label on driver side B pillar). When cold tire inflation pressure is higher than specified value or economic tire pressure is used, driving comfort will be reduced accordingly. Please adjust it according to your needs.

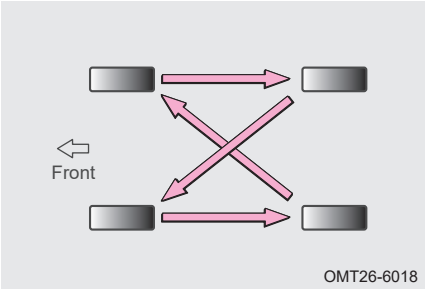
■ Be sure to keep proper tire inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in death or serious injury:

1. Excessive wear.
2. Poor handling.
3. Uneven wear.
4. Poor sealing of the tire bead.
5. Wheel deformation or tire separation.
6. Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires.
7. A greater possibility of tire damage caused by poor road conditions.

CAUTION

- It is normal that the tire inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- If the tire needs to be inflated frequently, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If a tire often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.
- Use a tire pressure gauge to check cold tire inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tire may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.
- Be sure to install tire valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt and moisture could get into valve core and possibly cause air leakage. If the caps are lost, install new ones as soon as possible.

Tire Rotation



To equalize tire wear and extend tire service life, recommends that four tires are rotated every 10,000 km (the best adjustment and rotation range is 5,000 - 7,000 km); The tire rotation cycle may vary according to driver's driving habits and road surface conditions.

READ

Tire rotation should be performed by professionals, please contact the authorized service station.

Checking Battery

Battery (12 V): Check and make sure that the battery (12 V) terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, external cracks, or loose fixing clamps.

Checking Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter and replace it as necessary.

READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact the authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid

If no washer fluid is sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the body painted surface.
- Do not use water as washer fluid when temperature is below zero. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.
- The capacity of washer fluid reservoir is 4.5 L. When the washer fluid level is low, low washer fluid level warning light will come on and a faults message will appear on the instrument cluster (if equipped), please refer to the actual vehicle.

Checking Wiper Blade

Check the roughness of wiper blade by sliding on its edge using your finger. If it is too rough, the wiper blade will not work effectively.

CAUTION

- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- If there are any chips on the windscreen from gravel, please repair quickly.
- In winter, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with washer fluid.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up, it is required to enter maintenance mode for some models.

Maintaining wiper blades

1. Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, otherwise the wiper blades could be deformed.
2. In order to prevent the formation of build up that obscures view, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
3. For safety, it is recommended to replace the wiper blades 1 to 2 times a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at authorized service station.
4. Apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades after washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, which can remove the remaining wax layer.
5. Do not operate wiper blades when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
6. Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
7. Avoid using glass plating agent and hydrophobic agent on the front and rear windshields. The hydrophobic layer will fall off slowly after using, resulting in uneven friction of windshield and abnormal noise of wiper shaking.
8. When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the windshield and wiper blades.

Using wipers

1. Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
2. When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
3. Washer fluid should be added as soon as is needed, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
4. In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze them before using. Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information

Maintenance information for the first 15,000 km (within 12 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)				
Date: _____ Mileage: _____				
Check Items	1	Check lubrication system, cooling system and fuel system for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	2	Replace engine oil and oil filter.	Y☐	N☐
	3	Check transmission fluid level and color. Add if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	4	Check coolant level. Add coolant or adjust concentration if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	5	Check transmission for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	6	Check steering tie rod boot for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	7	Check propeller shaft constant velocity universal joint boot for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	8	Check brake fluid for leakage and brake pipes for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	9	Check if brake sub cylinders work normally.	Y☐	N☐
	10	Check if tire inflation pressure is as specified.	Y☐	N☐
	11	Check belt tension of alternator and A/C compressor. Adjust tension if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	12	Check hood hinge and tab.	Y☐	N☐
	13	Check A/C system for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	14	Check installation condition for steering universal joint boot and check for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	15	Check if gears of transmission shift smoothly.	Y☐	N☐
	16	Check coupling bolts between chassis and vehicle body for looseness.	Y☐	N☐
	17	Check seat belts for correct operation.	Y☐	N☐
	18	Check engine working condition, electronic injection parameters and emission while idling.	Y☐	N☐
	19	Check if mechanisms function properly by testing driving.	Y☐	N☐

	20	Check that there is no obvious rusting or deformation on the power battery surface.	Y☐	N☐
	21	Check that the fixing bolt of power battery is free of crack, rusting and falling off.	Y☐	N☐
	22	Check waterproof vent valve of power battery for looseness and deformation, and vent hole for blockage.	Y☐	N☐
	23	Check power battery connector for dust, water, deterioration and deformation, replace as necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	24	Check that the appearance is intact and there are no cuts and other damages for low voltage wire harness connector; The connection is normal without looseness, falling off, water, etc.	Y☐	N☐
	25	Check that the high voltage circuit connector is connected properly without looseness, rusting, crack, etc.; The wire harness is tightened without shaking.	Y☐	N☐

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule lists vehicle maintenance items that need to be carried out. Please go to authorized service station for maintenance according to mileage in maintenance schedule.

For general area, regular maintenance interval is every 1 year or 15,000 km (-total mileage), whichever comes first.

I: Inspect, adjust, clean or replace if necessary; R: Replace.

Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
Meter Indicating System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Video and Entertainment System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Diagnostic Tester Inspection		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rear Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wiper System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling Effect		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning Filter		It is recommended to be replaced every 1 year or 10,000 km (whichever comes first). If the maintenance period is more than 1 year or 10,000 km, it is recommended to replace each maintenance.									
Coolant Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Freezing Point of Coolant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Water Content of Brake Fluid		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil and Oil Filter		It is recommended to replace every 1 years or 10,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Engine Oil Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Fluid and External Filter Assembly		It is recommended to replace every 4 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Transmission Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
Fuel Filter		Internal fuel filter: The integrated fuel pump is maintenance free type (troubleshoot the cause of failure)									
Battery Voltage		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Shock Absorber		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Propeller Shaft and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Chassis Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Gear		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Column		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Link, Ball and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Appearance		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Pattern		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spare Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Wheel Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Rotation		It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km (the optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km).									
Engine Oil Pan and Drain Bolts		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Housing Body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Related Fluid Line (- such as Steering, Brake, Fuel etc.) and Wire Harness		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
There is no obvious rusting or deformation on the		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
power battery surface											
The fixing bolt of power battery is free of crack, rusting and falling off		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Waterproof vent valve of power battery is not loose, deformed, and vent hole is not blocked		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power battery connector is free of dust, water, aging and deformation		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spark Plug		Replace every 30,000 km.									
Brake Plate		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Disc		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Filter		It is recommended to be replaced every 1 year or 10,000 km (whichever comes first). If the maintenance period is more than 1 year or 10,000 km, it is recommended to replace each maintenance.									
Drive Belt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
The appearance is intact and there are no cuts and other damages for low voltage wire harness connector; The connection is normal without looseness, falling off, water, etc		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
The high voltage circuit connector is connected properly without looseness, rusting, crack, etc.; The wire harness is		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
tightened without shaking											
Charcoal Canister Filter (If Equipped)		Replace every 3 years or 60,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Battery		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Throttle Valve		It is recommended to clean every 15,000 km.									
Four-wheel Alignment		Check four-wheel alignment every 20,000 km and adjust if necessary.									
Fuel Vapor Rubber Pipe		It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Refueling Hose of Fuel		It is recommended to replace every 5 years or 200,000 km for products made of ordinary rubber (such as NBR+PVC/CSM, etc.) (whichever comes first); It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km for products made of fluororubber (whichever comes first). It is recommended to replace the above hoses timely which may cause performance defect such as crack.									

*: We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.

READ

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services in the table is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore, there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- Continue periodic maintenance beyond 150,000 km or 120 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 150,000 km or 120 months to the column headings.
- For special area, there may be special maintenance specifications. We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance specifications applied to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- The engine oil and oil filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- It should be checked every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- The lubricant should be replaced every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle is driven in the following areas.
  - High humidity areas.
  - Mountainous areas.
  - Extremely cold and hot areas.
  - Drive on rough roads (bumpy roads, gravel roads, snow, etc.) for a long time.
  - Drive on mountain roads, uphill/downhill for a long time.
  - Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently.
  - In many cases, drive in high temperature (higher than 32℃), heavy traffic urban road.
  - When used as a police car, taxi, commercial vehicle, trailer, etc.
- The air filter and air conditioning filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- *Examples of severe driving conditions:
- Drive in extremely cold and hot weather (only for engine oil, engine oil level, steering and suspension system).
- Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently (only for engine oil, engine oil level, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums).
- Drive on dusty roads (only for air cleaner element, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).

⚠ CAUTION

- Drive on rough and/or muddy roads (only for disc brake pads and discs/ front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive in areas where road salt or other corrosive materials are used (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- In the coastal areas (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- If the vehicle is involved in a traffic accident, soaking in water, bumping, or alarming, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- Never overcharge/discharge and change the setting parameters of power battery system without authorization.
- A/C temperature setting in the vehicle should be appropriate, and the A/C operating time should not be too long.
- Prevent the power battery system from entering water when washing the vehicle.
- The vehicle should avoid wading in too deep water. If the vehicle wades in the water, it should drive slowly to prevent water from splashing into the power battery box.
- The vehicle cannot be started when the battery power is too low.
- Before driving, check the remaining charge (SOC value) of the power battery. Please charge and then drive the vehicle if necessary according to the mileage to be driven to prevent power failure and the vehicle stopping in the middle. During driving, if SOC is lower than 30%, rapid acceleration and high-speed driving should be avoided, and the vehicle should be driven to the nearest charging pile for charging as soon as possible.
- When using in high-temperature weather in summer, it is recommended to keep the vehicle stationary for 30 minutes before charging (if it needs to be charged), and then keep the vehicle stationary for 30 minutes after charging to prevent the high temperature alarm caused by the continuous use of battery system and the accumulation of heat, which will affect the service life of battery system.
- When using in low-temperature weather in winter, it is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using to prevent the temperature of power battery system from dropping below 0° C, which will affect the service life of battery and use safety during charging.

Technical Data

Fluid Name	Specification	After-sale Maintenance
Oil (SQRH4J15)	FUCHS C50W-20	4.5 ± 0.2 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Transmission Fluid (351HHB)	TITAN EG DHT 5105	5.0 ± 0.1 L
Rear Differential Oil	Castrol BOT 805 C EV	1.45 ± 0.05 L
High Temperature Coolant (Engine coolant)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	8.5 ± 0.5 L
Low Temperature Coolant (Power battery coolant)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	7.0 ± 0.5 L (short range) 8.0 ± 0.5 L (long range)
Brake Fluid	DOT4	The level of brake fluid reservoir is between MIN and MAX
Spark Plug	3707AAG	/
Refrigerant	R1234yf	700 ± 15g
Compressor oil	PVE	180 ± 10g

READ

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gases and CO2 equivalent 0.00035t.

CAUTION

- Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please go to authorized service station for details.
- Only genuine parts and fluids can be used, otherwise your claim rights will be affected.
- For engine oil and transmission fluid, only use brands and specifications recommended by authorized service station.
- The above filling amount is only for reference. The specific fluid amount should be based on the actual vehicle measurement.

SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 290

Vehicle Product Label 291

Engine Number..... 291

Rear Drive Motor number..... 292

Microwave Window 292

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 293

Vehicle Type..... 294

Vehicle Weight..... 294

Vehicle Performance 295

Engine Performance..... 296

Fuel System 297

Suspension System..... 298

Wheel Alignment..... 298

Wheel and Tire 299

Battery..... 299

Drive Motor 300

Power Battery..... 301

Light Bulb Specification..... 302

Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components..... 303

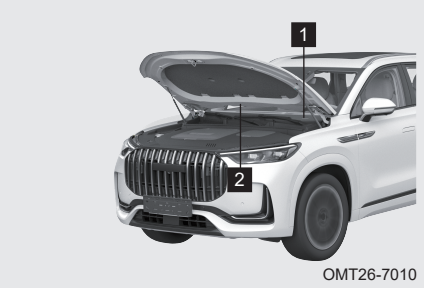
Your Rights 304

Contact Us 304

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Vehicle identification number on vehicle

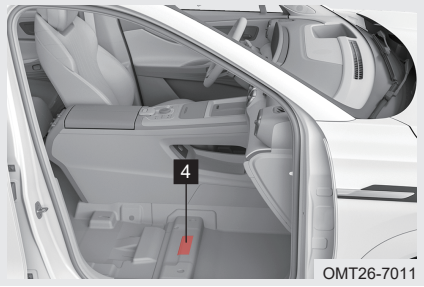


1 Vehicle identification number label is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel (as shown in the illustration), and can be seen from the outside through the front windshield.

2 Vehicle identification number label is located at the lower part of the front compartment cover (as shown in the illustration).



3 Vehicle identification number label is located at the lower part of the back door (as shown in the illustration).



4 Vehicle identification number is stamped under the front passenger seat (as shown in the illustration).

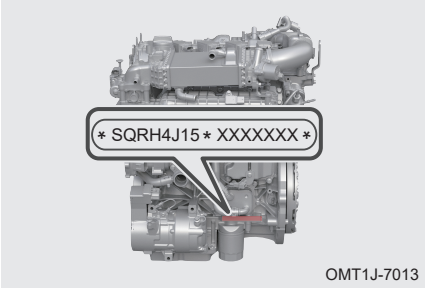
⚠ CAUTION
It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove vehicle identification number and areas around it.

Vehicle Product Label



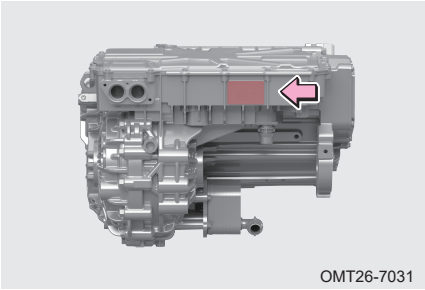
Vehicle product label is located on right quarter outer panel (as shown in the illustration).

Engine Number



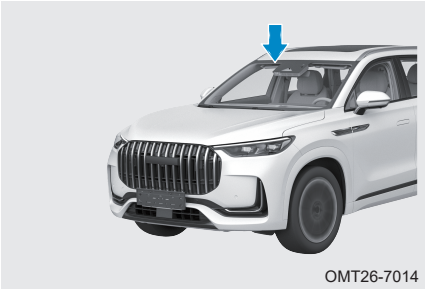
Engine number is located on engine block (as shown in the illustration).

Rear Drive Motor number



Rear Drive Motor number is located as shown in the illustration.

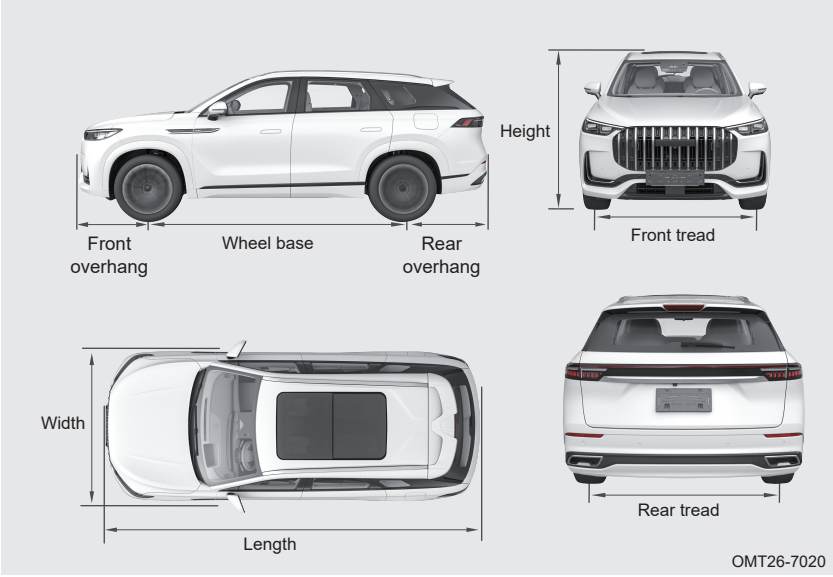
Microwave Window



The microwave window is located on the inner side of the front windshield to the back of inside rear view mirror, where is for wireless RF signal transmission and installation of automotive electronic identification.

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,820
	Width (mm)	1,930
	Height (mm)	1,710
Wheel Base (mm)		2,820
Tread	Front (mm)	1,638
	Rear (mm)	1,641
Overhang	Front (mm)	920
	Rear (mm)	1,080

Vehicle Type

Vehicle Type	4 × 4 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, 2- compartment, 5-door, 6-seat, integral body, left-hand drive
Engine Model	SQRH4J15
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, watercooled, 4- stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler
Fuel Supply Type	Direct injection
Transmission Model	351HHB
External Charging Method	AC slow charging, DC fast charging

Vehicle Weight

Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		2,229 (5 seat) 2,260 (7 seat)
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1,151 (5 seat) 1,147 (7 seat)
	Rear Axle (kg)	1,078 (5 seat) 1,113 (7 seat)
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2,893
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1,207
	Rear Axle (kg)	1,686
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		5/7

⚠ WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and could cause a personal injury and accident.

Vehicle Performance

Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		162
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	Left Turn (m)	11.5
		Right Turn (m)	11.5
	Approach Angle (°)		19.7
	Departure Angle (°)		20.5
Power Performance	Maximum Vehicle Speed for PHEV (km/h)		180
	Maximum Vehicle Speed for Pure Electric Vehicle (km/h)		140
	Maximum Gradeability (%)		＞35

Engine Performance

Engine Model	SQRH4J15
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	72
Piston Stroke (mm)	92
Displacement (ml)	1,499
Compression Ratio	14.5 : 1
Rated Power (kw)	105
Rated Power Speed (rpm/min)	5,200
Maximum Net Power (kw)	105
Maximum Net Power Speed (rpm/min)	5,200
Maximum Torque (N·m)	215
Maximum Torque Speed (rpm/min)	2,500 - 4,000

Fuel System

Fuel Type*1	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher (unleaded super gasoline)
	E5/E10
Fuel Tank Type	Metal fuel tank
Fuel Tank Total Capacity	70 L
Fuel Pump	Electric fuel pump

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

READ

- Fuel tank capacity is different depending on vehicle configuration. Please refer to your real vehicle.
- E10 fuel can generally be compatible with E5 fuel, and usually will not cause damage to automotive products.
- Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong fuel type, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

CAUTION

- Only use recommended fuel type.
- The use of off-specification gasoline may cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty.
- Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and emission control system to function improperly.
- If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (-even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. Therefore, if you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Suspension System

Front Suspension	Macpherson type
Rear Suspension	H-arm multi-link rear suspension

Wheel Alignment

Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	-30′ ±45′
	Kingpin Caster Angle	6°21′ ±45′
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	12°52′ ±45′
	Front Wheel Toe-in	5′ ±5
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	-40′ ±30′
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	6′ ±5

Wheel and Tire

Tire Model		245/50 R20
Rim Model		7.5J
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	230
	Rear Wheel	230
Tightening Torque of Wheel Bolts (N·m)		M14:180±18
Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 100 km/h		The inside of wheel ⩽ 8 g, the outside of wheel ⩽ 10 g

READ

The tire inflation pressures listed in the table above apply only to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tire is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

CAUTION

- Tire pressure should be checked at least once a month and is particularly important if driving at high speeds.
- Cold tire inflation pressure values are listed on a label of the driver's doorsill.

Battery

Battery Model	12 V 40 Ah

Drive Motor

Model	TZ190XYCY2	KPTZ270YMXA0	KPTZ180YMXA0
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Cooling Method	Oil cooling	Oil cooling	Oil cooling
Rated Voltage (V)	350	345	345
Rated Power (kw)	69	45	50
Peek Power (kw)	175	75	90
Rated Torque (N·m)	118	120	110
Peak Torque (N·m)	310	170	220
Rated Speed (rpm)	5500	3582	4341
Peak Speed (rpm)	17200	6300	13000

Power Battery

Model	113ADS
Rated Voltage (V)	322.08
Rated Capacity (Ah)	107
Maximum Charge Power (kw)	148.3
Maximum Discharge Power (kw)	218.9
Cell Voltage (V)	3.66
Charging Operating Temperature Range of Battery System (℃)	-20~55
Discharging Operating Temperature Range of Battery System (℃)	30~55
Drive Mode	AWD

Light Bulb Specification

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlight	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Brake Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
High Mounted Brake Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Back-up Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Side Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Daytime Running Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
License Plate Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station

Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components

Components not included in vehicle length measurement range

The following devices do not have laden function and do not exceed the front or rear end of the vehicle by more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Wiper and washer

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, drive mode and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— External sunshade device

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.

— Rear emblem plate with LOGO

— Removable trailer or towing device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle width size:

— Indirect view device

— School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, drive mode and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Local water drain slot: Refers to the water drain slot used to guide rain flow above driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield

— Flexible protruding part of splash proof system

— Retractable step plate, entering/exiting slope of bus, lifting platform and equivalent that is in the retract state

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Tire failure signal device

— Tire pressure indicator

— Deformed part of tire wall directly above contact point between tire and ground

— Reversing assistance device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle height measurement range:

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function:

— Intake duct

— Indirect view device

— Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)

— Vehicle rear air guide device that is removable or folding, and its deployed and retracted length is no more than 2,000 mm and 200 mm respectively.

— Tailboard, entering/exiting slope and equivalent with a horizontal length no more than 300 mm in retract state

— Tail ladder

Your Rights

Depending on local law, you may have the following rights regarding your personal data: the right to object or withdraw consent, the right to access, update, and correct inaccuracies of your personal data, the right to have your personal data restricted or deleted, the right to receive your personal data and request its transfer to another organization where technically feasible, and the right to be informed of and lodge a complaint with your local data protection authority.

Contact Us

To make a query, raise a concern, or exercise your data subject rights, please feel free to contact us at privacy@mychery.com. This applies if you are based within the European Economic Area and the UK.

We take your privacy seriously and aim to respond to you within one month or within the timeline specified by the relevant local privacy protection law, after confirming your identity.

If you believe that we have not adequately addressed your complaints or concerns, you have the right to lodge a complaint with a competent data protection authority.

A

A/C Setting 112
AC Charging Socket Electronic Lock 238
Active Pre-tensioner Seat Belt (If Equipped)..... 68
Active Speed Limit (ASL) 183
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)..... 177
Adjusting Steering Wheel Electrically (If Equipped)..... 38
Adjusting Steering Wheel Manually (If Equipped) 38
After Starting Engine 15
Air Conditioning Cooling Operation..... 117
Air Conditioning Heating Operation..... 117
Air Conditioning Operation 112
Air Conditioning System..... 110
Air Outlets Airflow Control 120
Airbag 165
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ... 215
Appointment Upgrade Operation..... 127
Atmosphere Lamp 102
Audio Button 106
Audio System..... 101
Audio View 101
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 268
Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)..... 152
Automatic A/C 110
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System 197
Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing 41
Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror 39
Automatic Transmission..... 155

B

Back Door Emergency Opening . 142
Back Door 138
Backup Power Supply (12 V)..... 136
Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency..... 252
Battery 299
Before Driving Vehicle 146
Before Starting Engine 14
Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped) 189
Blind Spot Detection Assist System 189
Brake System..... 150
Braking Force Control System ... 212

C

Charging Device 230
Charging Method 234
Charging Precautions..... 240
Checking Air Conditioning Filter . 276
Checking Battery 276
Checking Brake Fluid Level..... 272
Checking Coolant Level..... 273
Checking Fuse 263
Checking Oil Level..... 271
Checking Radiator and Condenser 274
Checking Tires 274
Checking transmission fluid level 272
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid..... 277
Checking Wiper Blade 277
Child Restraint System 70
Column Shift Switch 156
Correct Sitting Posture 53
Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading..... 129
Cruise Control System (CCS).... 176
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23
Cybersecurity Notice 23
Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice..... 23

D

Delivery Card 5
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11

Discharging Precautions 246
Door Mechanical Switch 92
Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped) 191
Door Unlocking/Locking 90
Doors 90
Drive Motor 300
Driver Monitoring System (DMS) 211
Driving Mode 159
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21
Driving Safety Assist System 193
Driving Through Water 19

E

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function ... 62
Effective Range 83
Electric Fuel Tank Cap 142
Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 150
Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 149
Emergency Call Function 252
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped) 187
Emergency Towing Vehicle 259
Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 240
Energy Recovery Intensity 223
Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High 258
Engine Number 291
Engine Performance 296
Exhaust System Inspection 17
Extended Function 217
Exterior Lighting 46
External Discharging Function (If Equipped) 243
External Discharging Method 243

F

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card 7
First Maintenance Information ... 279
Flat Tire 254
Fogging Instructions for Light 52
Follow Me Home Function 50
Foot Brake 154
FOTA Upgrade (If Equipped) 122
FOTA Upgrade 122
Front Seat 54
Front USB Port 136
Front wiper operation 42
Fuel System 297
Fuel Tank Cap 142
Fuse Box 261
Fuse 261

H

Hazard Light 252
Head Restraint 53
Head Up Display (If Equipped) ... 193
Headlight Leveling Adjusting 50
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System 214
Hood 137
Horn 37
How to Read This Manual 2
How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 13

I

Immobilizer System 88
Index 2
Inspection and Preparation Before Driving 146
Installing Child Restraint System .. 74
Installing Towing Eyelet 260
Instrument Cluster Overview 27
Instrument Cluster 27
Integrated Braking Force Control System 212
Intelligent active speed limiting (ISLC) 175
Intelligent active speed limiting (ISLC) 175
Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) 204
Intelligent Cruise Control System 201
Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) 51

Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD)..... 159
Interior Lighting 48

J

Jump-starting 265

K

Key Information 81
Keyless Entry 85

L

Label Location..... 290
Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 184
Lane Assist System..... 184
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) 186
Lane Departure Warning (LDW). 184
Leaving Reminder System (DAI) 194
Light Bulb Specification 302
Lighting System..... 46
Local Setting 103

M

Maintenance Schedule 280
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components 303
Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade 124
Microwave Window 292
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 100
Moon Roof Remote Control Function 99

N

Network Security Notification..... 130
New Energy Settings..... 221
New Vehicle Break-in 12
New Vehicle Inspection.....4, 11
Normal Maintenance 270

O

Off-road Driving Precautions 18
Off-road Driving..... 18
ONE BOX braking system..... 213
Opening/Closing Hood 137
Operating Mode..... 224
Operation for Upgrade Now..... 124
Operation/Malfunction Indicator ... 28
Outside rear view mirror memory function 41
Outside Rear View Mirror..... 39

P

Panoramic Moon Roof..... 98
Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)..... 204
Parking on Slope 16
Parking Operations 15
Parking Radar System..... 208
Parking View Monitor System 204
Pedestrian Reminder System 247
Phone-link 107
Pictorial Index 2
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV) 218
Power Back Door..... 138
Power Battery 301
Power Battery 218
Power Child Lock.....93
Power Outlet..... 136
Power Windows.....93
Precautions Before Driving Vehicle 14
Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition 19

Q

Quick access to management.... 131

R

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information 269
Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 191
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped) ... 192
Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System 192
Rear Drive Motor number 292
Rear USB Port 137
Rear View Mirror 39
Rear Wiper Operation 43
Reflective Vest 253
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box 119
Regular Maintenance 279
Remote Control System (If Equipped) 130
Remote Control System 130
Remote Starting for Smart Key (If Equipped) 89
Removing Battery 264
Repair and Maintenance 268
Replacing Fuse 263
Replacing Wiper Blade 45

S

Safety Check 14, 269
Safety Warning for Charging 242
Safety Warning for Discharging .. 246
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 68
Seat Belt 63
Seat Heating Function 58
Seat Massage (If Equipped) 61
Seat Memory Function 60
Seat Ventilation Function 59
Seat 53
Second Row Manual Seat (5-seat) 56
Second Row Window Sunshade (If Equipped) 95
Shift Paddle (If Equipped) 157
Shortcut Menu 102
Smart Key 81
Smart Vehicle Locating Function .. 51
Spare Tools 254
Speed Limit System 176
Steering System 149
Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped) 37
Steering Wheel 37
Storage Space 133
Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 137
Suspension System 298
Symbols in Manual 3

T

Table of Contents 2
Technical Data 287
Third Row Seat (7-seat) (If Equipped) 57
Tire Chains 21
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 195
Tire Rotation 276
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 72
Towing 258
Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System 201
Transmission 155

U

Upgrade Result Prompt 128
USB Port 136
User Registration Certificate 4

V

Vehicle Arming 87
Vehicle Dimensions 293
Vehicle Emergency Handling 254
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 290
Vehicle Locating with Smart Key (If Equipped) 89
Vehicle Performance 295
Vehicle Power-off 148
Vehicle Power-on 146
Vehicle Product Label 291

Vehicle Settings..... 103
Vehicle Specifications..... 293
Vehicle Type 294
Vehicle Weight 294
Voice Recognition Function..... 106

W

Warning Triangle 253
Wheel Alignment 298
Wheel and Tire..... 299
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 19
When Driving 15
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped) 96
Window Remote Control Function 96
Windows 93
Winter Driving Precautions..... 20
Winter Driving Tips..... 20
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped)..... 44
Wiper System..... 42
Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped) 121
Wireless Charging 121

Emergency Response Guide

RESCUE INFORMATION

1-1. Product Information

Vehicle basic information.....2

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System Information.....3

Disconnecting Battery (12 V).....6

High Voltage Power Release Method.....6

Unlocking Charging Gun 7

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 7

1-2. Rescue Program Information

Protection Device Required for Rescuer.....8

Parking operations 9

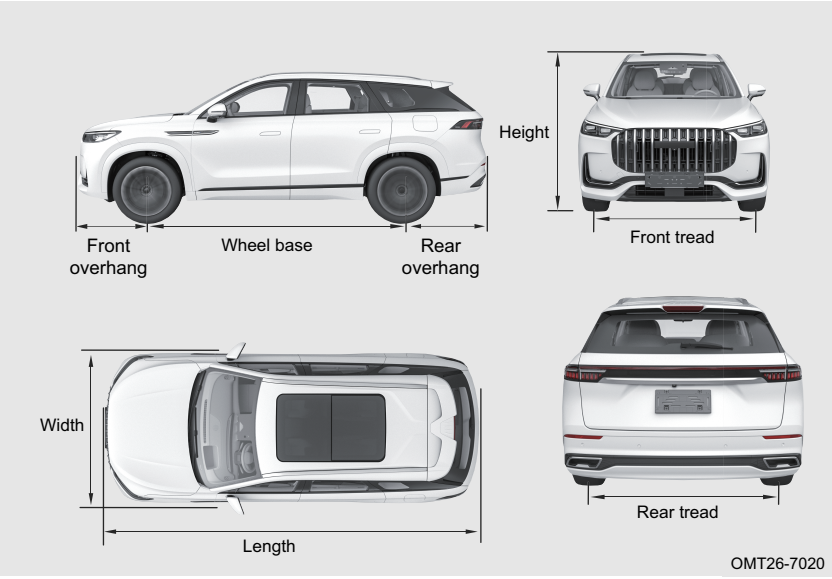
Back Door Emergency Opening.....9

Emergency Rescue 9

Towing Vehicle..... 12

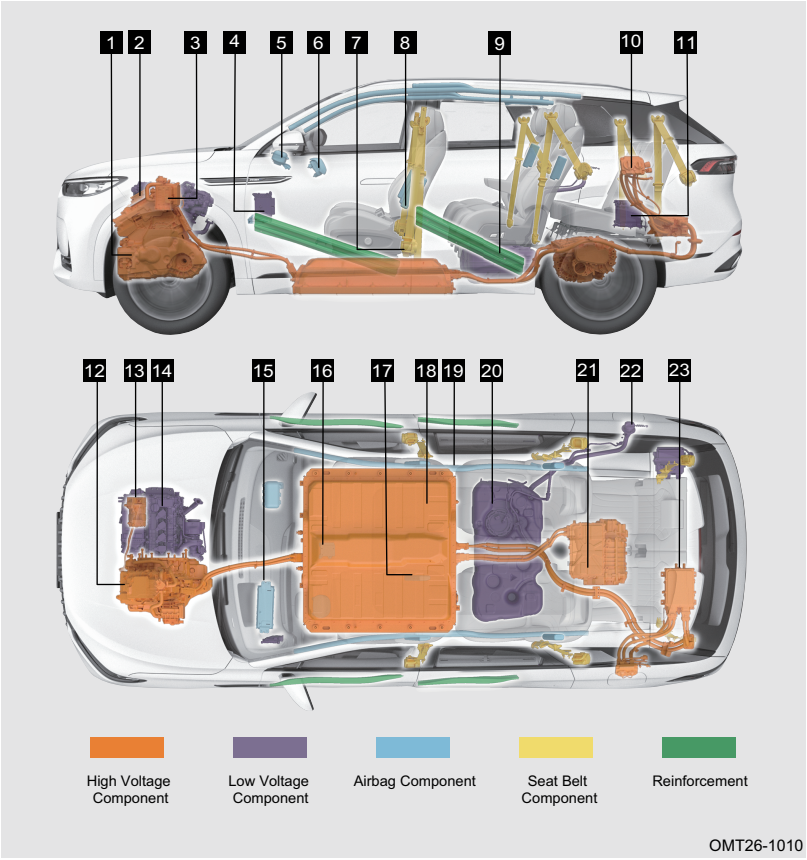
1-1. Product Information

Vehicle basic information



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,820	
	Width (mm)	1,930	
	Height (mm)	1,710	
Wheel Base (mm)		2,820	
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2,464	2,731
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		5	5/6

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System Information



1 Hybrid Transmission	2 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit	3 High Voltage Heater
4 Vehicle Control Unit	5 Front Passenger Airbag	6 Driver Airbag
7 Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)	8 Side Airbag (If Equipped)	9 Anti-collision Panel
10 AC/DC Charging Port	11 Battery (12 V)	12 Front Motor Controller
13 Electric Compressor	14 Engine	15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
16 Airbag Module	17 Center Airbag (If Equipped)	18 Power Battery

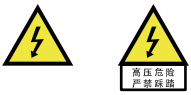
19 Side Curtain (If Equipped)
20 High Pressure Fuel Tank
21 Rear Drive Motor (If Equipped)
22 Fuel Filler
23 On-board Charger Assembly

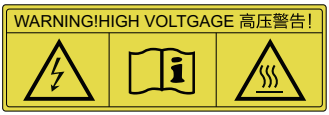
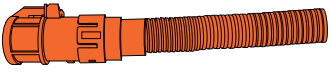
⚠ WARNING
• Personnel without high-voltage technical qualification are not allowed to tough, repair or replace high voltage components or high voltage wire harness in the illustration. • In case of traffic accident, do not touch any component and high voltage wire harness in the illustration to avoid the second personal injury. • For towing of plug-in hybrid electric vehicle, strongly recommends that you seek help from professional rescuer or authorized service station. • When cutting the vehicle for rescue, avoid the components in the illustration and the rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

Plug-in hybrid electric vehicle system basic information

Power Battery Type	Energy
Nominal Capacity (Ah)	107
Fuel Type	Unleaded high cleanliness gasoline with an octane 92# or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity (L)	70

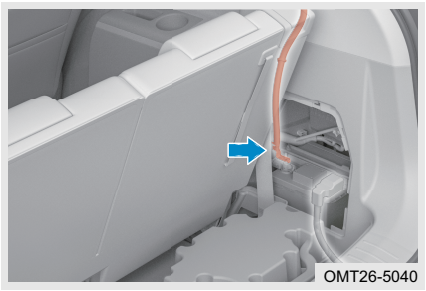
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System Warning Signs

High Voltage Warning Sign 1		Never touch high voltage system components. Never depress! Danger!
High Voltage Warning Sign 2		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock!
High Voltage Warning Sign 3		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage components without

		wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 4		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 5		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 6		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Wire Harness Sign		Vehicle high voltage system components are connected by orange high voltage wire harness. Never touch high voltage components without wearing protection device!
Power Battery Pack Warning Sign		Usage precautions for power battery pack!

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - After vehicle is started, power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning signs.
> - Never touch, remove or replace components, orange cable and connectors with power system warning signs to prevent high voltage electric shock.

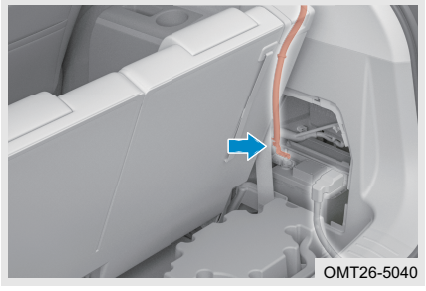
Disconnecting Battery (12 V)


OMT26-5040

Step 1: Click " OFF " button on quick menu to switch vehicle to power-off state;

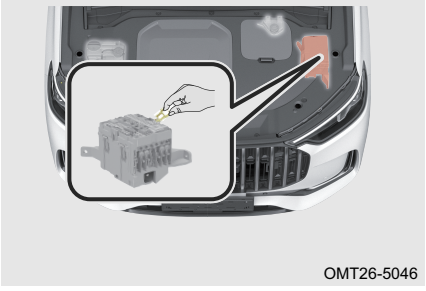
Step 2: Open the back door, lift right luggage compartment protector flip cover, and disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable.

High Voltage Power Release Method


OMT26-5040

Step 1: Click " OFF " button on control center to switch vehicle to power-off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, lift right luggage compartment protector flip cover, and disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable.


OMT26-5046

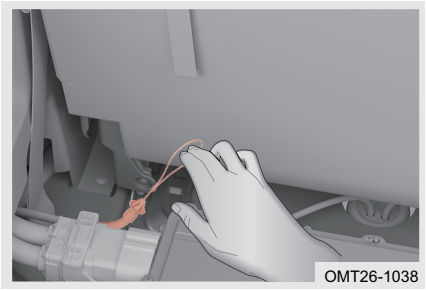
Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover, refer to fuse box location diagram at fuse box upper cover, pull BMS fuse out by a fuse remover and disconnect the BMS module power.

Unlocking Charging Gun


OMT26-1037

During charging, the charging gun will be locked automatically. With charging not completed/stopped: If vehicle is in the armed state, press the unlock button on smart key twice continuously to unlock the charging gun and stop charging; if vehicle is in the disarming state, stop the charging power output or click Slow Charger Unlock on Charging/ Discharging Management of Energy Center Setting screen to unlock the charging gun. After charging is completed: If vehicle is in the disarming state, charging gun will unlock automatically; if vehicle is in the armed state, charging gun will remain be locked, and can only be unlocked after disarming. The charging gun can only be unplugged after it is unlocked. Never operate it forcibly.

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging)


OMT26-1038

When abnormal lock fault occurs in electronic lock of the charging gun or discharging gun, the charging gun and discharging gun can be manually unlocked with electronic lock cable.

Step 1: Make sure that the vehicle is not charged/discharged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;

Step 2: Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out storage box;

Step 3: Pull the electronic lock cable to manually unlock the charging gun and discharging gun.

1-2. Rescue Program Information

Protection Device Required for Rescuer



Basic Rescue Protection Device:

- 1 High Resistance Safety Work Shoes
- 2 Cotton Gloves
- 3 Protective Gloves

High Voltage Rescue Protection Device:

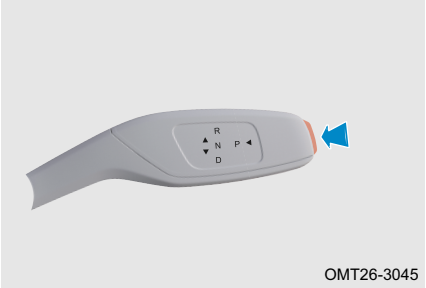
- 4 High Voltage Power Specialist Protective Clothing
- 5 Rubber Sheet
- 6 Safety Helmet with Goggles

Fire Rescue Protection Device:

- 7 Compressed Air Breathing Mask
- 8 Thermal Imaging Camera

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation to guarantee personal safety.

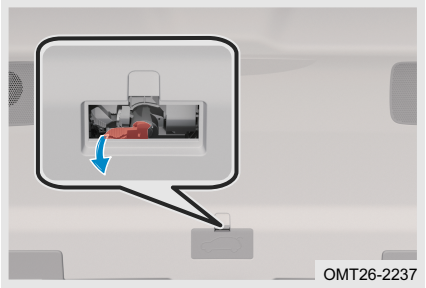
Parking operations



OMT26-3045

Fully depress the brake pedal, press the button on the right side of column shift switch to shift the shift lever to P, the parking brake function can be applied automatically by EPB system.

Back Door Emergency Opening


OMT26-2237

Back door cannot be opened when battery (12 V) is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door stand-by device switch (stop the vehicle as safely as possible if condition permits).

Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open stand-by device cover;

Step 3: Press down the stand-by device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

Emergency Rescue

How to avoid water intrusion into high voltage components

1. When a vehicle is flooded, first pull the vehicle out of the water and then cut off the high voltage power supply to avoid greater electric shock hazard due to vehicle immersion.
2. When washing the vehicle, avoid washing the charging port cover switch area with a high pressure water gun, otherwise it may cause the charging port cover to open and cause water to enter the charging port end.
3. Do not charge when there are obvious water stains in the charging port to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device; When charging the vehicle, do not wash the charging port area to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device.
4. Do not wipe the door protective panel with wet tissue, wet cloth, detergent etc. Pay attention to protection during the use of vehicle (such as on rainy

days, washing vehicle) and try to avoid water intrusion into the door protective panel, otherwise it may cause internal electrical component fault etc.

5. Try to choose a place with a shelter for charging in the severe convective weather; If the vehicle is soaked in water or wading level is above the doorsill position, it may cause water to enter into the high pressure components. It is necessary to contact authorized service station for proper test and treatment in time; Never drive on a road when water exceeds half of the tires.
6. Try not to drive on a road with unknown depth of water to avoid leakage accidents or damage to high voltage electrical components; If wading is necessary, analyze the road condition and confirm the depth of water before driving, and the water depth should not be higher than the bottom of the body; It is recommended not to stay in deep water for a long time during wading, otherwise vehicle high voltage components may be damaged.

Driving in wade

■ When vehicle drives in wade:

1. If you cannot drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area, please cut off power supply immediately.
2. When driving in wade, do not stop the vehicle and keep driving at low speed (vehicle speed cannot exceed 10 km/h).
3. Drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area and park it in a safe area. Check if there is any water in the vehicle, and clean it if there is.

■ After vehicle drives in wade:

1. If the vehicle is severely flooded, all persons in the vehicle must evacuate to a safe area immediately.
2. After the vehicle drives in wade, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to remove any residual water from the brake disc and ensure that the brake system can work properly.
3. Go to authorized service station for routine inspection as soon as possible, as water may enter into components of the drive train system and dilute the grease, causing system malfunction when vehicle drives in wade.

Fire prevention

■ In order to prevent vehicle fires effectively, pay attention to the following precautions during usage:

1. Do not leave flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle.

   In hot summer, the internal temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can reach more than 70℃. If lighters, cleaner, perfume and other flammable and explosive materials are left in the vehicle, it is very easy to cause fire or even explosion.
2. After smoking, make sure that the cigarette butt is completely extinguished.

Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause fires. If the cigarette butt is not completely extinguished, it may cause a fire.

3. It is recommended to regularly go to authorized service station for inspection.

   Check the engine compartment for oil leakage regularly and clean any oil stain or oil on the engine in time.

   Check regularly if vehicle circuits, electrical appliances and wire harness connectors, insulation and fixing position are normal. If any problem is found, handle it in time.

4. Do not modify vehicle circuits or add electrical components.

   a. It is strictly prohibited to use fuses or other metal wires that exceed the rated specifications of electrical appliances to replace fuses.

   b. Installation of other electrical appliances (such as high power audio and light) can cause excessive load on circuits, and wire harness is prone to heating, causing fires. Improper modification of electrical appliances and circuits can create contact resistance and abnormal heating, causing fires.

5. Precautions for driving.

   When parking the vehicle, especially in summer, it is important to check underneath for flammable substances, such as hay, dead branches and leaves, or wheat straw. If there are flammable substances under the vehicle, it is very likely to cause fires. When driving, the vehicle should also avoid roads covered with flammable materials such as dry leaves, wheat straw and weed etc. as much as possible, or stop vehicle in time to check underneath for flammable materials after passing through such roads. When parking, try to avoid areas exposed to sunlight as much as possible.

6. Always leave portable fire extinguishers in the vehicle and master the usage methods.

   To ensure vehicle safety, fire extinguishers should be equipped in the vehicle and regularly inspected and replaced; At the same time, it is important to be familiar with the usage of fire extinguishers and be prepared to avoid being helpless in case of accidents.

7. When repairing or maintaining a vehicle, it is necessary to disconnect the battery (12 V) power.

Fire treatment

■ If the vehicle is on fire, take effective measures promptly and calmly to minimize losses:

1. After the accident occurs, contact the insurance company for post-treatment in time.
2. After the fire department extinguishes the fire, ask for a police certificate and a statement of the fire cause.

3. Generally, a fire has early warning signs (such as abnormal noise or odor from body). Once abnormal conditions are found, shut down the vehicle in time, and carry out active rescue according to the actual situation.
4. If smoke is found in the front compartment, do not open the front compartment cover immediately (As doing so will intensify the combustion and spread of the fire due to a large amount of air. Because the combustion material in the front compartment is limited, closing the front compartment cover can control the slow burning of the fire, which is conducive to extinguishing it).
5. If fire occurs, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information card to the rescuers.

⚠ WARNING
When fire occurs, never touch any part of vehicle directly. Keep away from the vehicle and wait for professional rescuers wearing appropriate protective device to operate it.

Power battery leakage

If power battery leaks, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information card to the rescuers.

⚠ WARNING
High voltage battery liquid leakage caused by collision can only be operated by professional rescuers who wear protective mask and solvent-isolation gloves. Do not touch liquid directly.

Vehicle cutting area

Vehicle pillar uses cast aluminum alloy to protect personal safety. If it is necessary to cut during rescue, proper tools should be used. It is forbidden to cut the high temperature and high voltage areas of the vehicle.

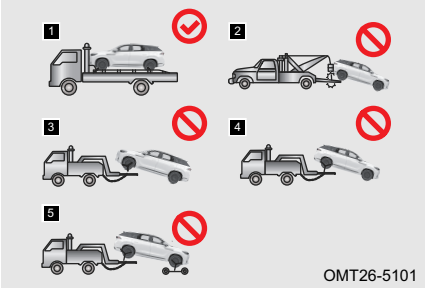
⚠ WARNING
When cutting the vehicle, professional rescuers must use appropriate tools such as hydraulic cutter etc. and wear appropriate personal protective device to avoid serious personal injuries.

Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service station or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

> ⚠ WARNING
> - Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty.
> - To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly.
> - Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use **1** platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method **2** **3** **4** **5** shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

> ⚠ CAUTION
> Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

> ⚠ WARNING
> - No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
> - The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.